

# Secure Perfect®

Access Control and Integrated  
Security Management System

## Installation Guide

v6.0



imagination at work



**Copyright © 2004 GE Security, Inc.  
All Rights Reserved  
Printed in the USA**

**This publication may contain examples of screens and reports used in daily operations. Examples include fictitious names of individuals and companies. Any similarity to names and addresses of actual business enterprises and persons is entirely coincidental.**

**This document contains proprietary information of General Electric Company, USA and is furnished to its customer solely to assist that customer in the installation, testing, operation, and/or maintenance of the equipment described. This document shall not be reproduced in whole or in part nor shall its contents be disclosed to any third party without the written approval of GE Security.**

**Secure Perfect is a registered trademark of GE Security, Inc.**

**Access, Active Directory, Directory File Services, DirectX, Internet Explorer, Microsoft, .NET, SQL Mail, SQL Server, Windows, Windows NT, and Windows XP are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.**

**Adobe and Acrobat are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.**

**Citrix is a trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc.**

**Crystal Reports is a registered trademark of Crystal Decisions.**

**Dell is a registered trademark of Dell Computer Corporation.**

**Digi is a registered trademark of Digi International.**

**FlashPoint is a registered trademark of Integral Technologies.**

**Intel and Pentium are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.**

**Netscape and Netscape Navigator are registered trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation in the United States and other countries.**

**PassagePoint is a trademark of Stopware, Inc.**

**pcANYWHERE is a trademark of Symantec Corporation.**

**Yahoo is a registered trademark of Yahoo! Inc.**

---

# Contents

<b>1. Introduction to Secure Perfect 6.0 .....</b>	<b>1.1</b>
Quick Start Guide .....	1.2
Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software	
Requirements .....	1.3
Hardware .....	1.3
Software .....	1.4
Operating Systems and Configuration Summary .....	1.5
Before You Begin .....	1.6
What's New in Secure Perfect 6.0? .....	1.8
Installation and Setup Outlines .....	1.12
Preparing a Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced	
and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server .....	1.13
Preparing a Windows 2000 Professional	
or Windows XP Professional	
as a Secure Perfect Server or Client .....	1.15
Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0 .....	1.17
Notational and Typographical	
Conventions in this Guide .....	1.20
Related Documentation .....	1.21
Training Sources .....	1.21
 <b>2. Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003</b>	
<b>    Standard Edition Server .....</b>	<b>2.1</b>
Pre-Installation Checklist .....	2.2
Installing the Network Board .....	2.3
Determining Server Type .....	2.3
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain .....	2.3
Preparing the Operating System .....	2.4
Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server .....	2.4
Setting Up Your Monitor .....	2.5
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration .....	2.5
Items Specific to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server .....	2.6
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration .....	2.6
Windows User Password .....	2.7
Matching User Information .....	2.7
User Logon Modifications .....	2.7
Enable Network Folder Sharing .....	2.7
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 .....	2.7
Verifying Microsoft SQL Server Installation .....	2.11
Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties	
Through Enterprise Manager .....	2.12

Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Service Manager .....	2.13
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack .....	2.15
What's Next? .....	2.16
<b>3. Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows XP     Professional Computer .....</b>	<b>3.1</b>
Pre-Installation Checklist .....	3.2
Supported Microcontrollers .....	3.2
Installing the Network Board .....	3.3
Determining Computer Type .....	3.3
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain .....	3.3
OPTIONAL: Installing the Capture Card .....	3.4
Preparing the Operating System .....	3.4
Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional ...	3.4
Setting Up Your Monitor .....	3.5
Setting the Network Properties .....	3.6
Defining User Accounts .....	3.7
Assigning User Passwords .....	3.7
Item Specific to Windows 2000 Professional .....	3.8
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration .....	3.8
Items Specific to Windows XP Professional .....	3.8
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration .....	3.8
Windows XP User Password .....	3.9
Matching User Information .....	3.9
User Logon Modifications .....	3.9
Enable Network Folder Sharing .....	3.10
Disable Simple File Sharing .....	3.10
What's Next? .....	3.10
<b>4. Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software .....</b>	<b>4.1</b>
Prepare to Install .....	4.2
Selecting Installation Type .....	4.4
TYPICAL Installation .....	4.6
Instructions Specific to Typical Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Installations .....	4.8
Instructions Specific to Typical Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Installations .....	4.12
CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Edition .....	4.14



---

Instructions Specific to Windows 2000 or Windows 2003	
Server: .....	4.14
Custom Configuration Options .....	4.16
When Enterprise Custom Configurations are Complete: ...	4.60
CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional	
Edition .....	4.61
Instructions Specific to Windows 2000 or Windows	
XP Professional .....	4.61
Licensing Your Secure Perfect System .....	4.64
Setting Services to Automatic Startup .....	4.65
Server Folder Structure .....	4.67
Server Folders .....	4.68
Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts .....	4.70
Adding Additional Clients to the Database .....	4.71
Pinging Additional Client Computers .....	4.71
Adding Clients to the Database .....	4.72
What's Next? .....	4.75
<b>5. Installing Secure Perfect 6.0</b>	
<b>    in a Clustered Environment.....</b>	<b>5.1</b>
Prepare to Install .....	5.2
Pre-Installation Checklist .....	5.2
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain .....	5.3
Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 .....	5.4
Installation in a Cluster Environment .....	5.6
Cluster Configuration Options .....	5.10
Installing SPNodeInstall on an Additional Node .....	5.21
Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources .....	5.23
Upgrading a Clustered Environment .....	5.26
What's Next? .....	5.26
<b>6. Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition .....</b>	<b>6.1</b>
Benefits of Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition .....	6.2
Sample Configuration Overview .....	6.3
Global Edition Definitions .....	6.4
Pre-Installation Checklist .....	6.7
Sequence of Global System Installation .....	6.8
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain .....	6.9
Prepare to Install .....	6.10
Selecting Installation Type .....	6.13
CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Database Server	
or Regional Database Server .....	6.14
Instructions Specific to Windows 2000, Windows 2003,	
and Advanced Server: .....	6.14

Custom Configuration Options .....	6.20
When Global Custom Configurations are Complete: .....	6.72
CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Edition on a Windows	
Professional Operating System .....	6.73
Instructions Specific to Windows Professional Operating	
System Installations .....	6.73
Licensing Your Secure Perfect System .....	6.78
Setting Services to Automatic Startup .....	6.79
Server Folder Structure .....	6.81
Server Folders .....	6.82
Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts .....	6.84
Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft	
Directory File Services .....	6.85
Creating Distributed File System Root .....	6.86
Creating a New DFS Link .....	6.92
Creating a New Replica .....	6.94
Optional Configurations .....	6.98
Converting the Global Database Server .....	6.98
Backup of Global Edition Databases .....	6.101
Restoring Global Edition Databases .....	6.102
Adding Additional Clients to the Database .....	6.104
Uninstalling a Global Edition System .....	6.108
Troubleshooting Tips for Global Edition .....	6.110
What's Next? .....	6.112

## **7. Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software**

<b>on Additional Clients .....</b>	<b>7.1</b>
Defining Additional Clients .....	7.2
Pinging the First Time License Computer .....	7.2
Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional	
or XP Professional Client Computer .....	7.4
Selecting Installation Type .....	7.6
TYPICAL Installation .....	7.6
CUSTOM Installation .....	7.10
Licensing the Client Computer .....	7.16
Setting Services to Automatic Startup .....	7.16
Global Edition Client Installations .....	7.18
What's Next? .....	7.18
Logging In to Client Computer .....	7.19

---

Viewing Imaging Status .....	7.20
Windows 2000 Imaging Login Setup .....	7.21
Setting Share Permissions on the Secure Perfect Server if Using a Domain .....	7.23
Modifying/Removing Clients .....	7.23
Client Folder Structure .....	7.23
Client Folders .....	7.24
What's Next? .....	7.25
<b>8. Licensing the Secure Perfect System .....</b>	<b>8.1</b>
Licensing Capacities .....	8.2
Licensing Secure Perfect .....	8.3
Obtaining the License .....	8.3
Entering the License Key .....	8.6
About Secure Perfect: License Summary .....	8.12
What's Next? .....	8.13
<b>9. Logging In and Configuring</b>	
<b>Secure Perfect 6.0 .....</b>	<b>9.1</b>
Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview .....	9.2
Starting Secure Perfect 6.0 and Logging In .....	9.5
Accessing Help .....	9.7
Adding Yourself as an Operator in Secure Perfect 6.0 .....	9.7
Initial Setup of Secure Perfect Records .....	9.8
Setting E-mail Accounts .....	9.8
Changing the Server Computer Name .....	9.8
Server Computer Name in System Properties .....	9.9
Server Computer Name Change using SPServer.exe Utility .....	9.10
Re-Creating a Microsoft SQL Server Registration .....	9.11
<b>10. Logging Out and Shutting Down .....</b>	<b>10.1</b>
Exiting Secure Perfect 6.0 .....	10.2
Quitting Windows Server .....	10.2
Shutting Down .....	10.2
Logging Out of Windows .....	10.3
Automatic Client Shutdown .....	10.3
<b>11. Backing Up and Restoring Data</b>	
<b>to an Enterprise Server .....</b>	<b>11.1</b>
Overview .....	11.2
Enterprise System Recovery Checklist .....	11.2
Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Recovery .....	11.3

---

Backing Up .....	11.4
Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfect Database .....	11.5
Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive .....	11.7
Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory .....	11.8
Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures .....	11.9
Backing Up the Secure Perfect Folder .....	11.9
Restoring .....	11.10
Restoring Secure Perfect 6.0 SecurePerfect Database ...	11.11
Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfect Database from Tape .....	11.12
Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive .....	11.13
Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive from Tape - SQL 2000 .....	11.15
Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory .....	11.16
Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory from Tape .....	11.17
Restoring the Secure Perfect Folder .....	11.18
Reclaiming Hard Drive Space .....	11.19
Shrinking the Database .....	11.19
Other Maintenance Options .....	11.20
 <b>12. Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server .....</b>	 <b>12.1</b>
Overview .....	12.2
Professional System Recovery Checklist .....	12.2
Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Recovery .....	12.3
Backing Up .....	12.3
Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases .....	12.5
Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures .....	12.6
Backing Up the Secure Perfect Folder .....	12.7
Restoring .....	12.7
Restoring Databases on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	12.7
Restoring Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures .....	12.9
 <b>13. Uninstalling Secure Perfect or Deleting a Database .....</b>	 <b>13.1</b>
Uninstalling Secure Perfect 6.0 Software .....	13.2

---

Before You Begin .....	13.2
Uninstalling .....	13.2
Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall .....	13.4
Deleting the Database .....	13.7
Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Server .....	13.7
Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Server .....	13.8
Removing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition .....	13.8
Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE)	
- Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional .....	13.9
<b>14. Upgrading Your 5.0 System</b>	
<b>to Secure Perfect 6.0 .....</b>	<b>14.1</b>
Upgrading Versions Prior to Secure Perfect 5.0 .....	14.2
Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0	
- ENTERPRISE SERVERS ONLY .....	14.2
Scenario 1 - Same Computer .....	14.3
Before You Begin .....	14.4
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	14.4
Stop Secure Perfect Services on	
Secure Perfect 5.0 Server .....	14.4
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder.....	14.5
Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft	
SQL Server Enterprise Manager.....	14.6
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard .....	14.7
Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases .....	14.9
Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System .....	14.9
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures	
to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.10
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number ...	14.10
Upgrade Client Computers.....	14.12
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application	
Code.....	14.12
Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers .....	14.13
Before You Begin .....	14.14
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	14.14
Set Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.14
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0	
Server.....	14.15
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder.....	14.16
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard .....	14.16
Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft	
SQL Server Enterprise Manager.....	14.17
Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Database	
to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.19
Run Create SP Database.....	14.22

---

License Your Secure Perfect 6.0 System .....	14.23
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.24
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number ...	14.24
Upgrade Client Computers .....	14.26
Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code .....	14.26
Uninstall Secure Perfect 5.0 from Original Computer.....	14.26
Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0	
- PROFESSIONAL SERVERS ONLY .....	14.28
Scenario 1 - Same Computer .....	14.29
Before You Begin .....	14.29
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	14.30
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0.....	14.30
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder .....	14.31
Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases .....	14.31
Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System .....	14.33
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.34
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number ...	14.34
Upgrade Client Computers .....	14.36
Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code .....	14.36
Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers .....	14.37
Before You Begin .....	14.38
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	14.38
Set Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.38
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server .....	14.39
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder .....	14.40
Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server .....	14.40
Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.42
Run Create SP Database .....	14.43
License Your Secure Perfect 6.0 System .....	14.44
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server .....	14.44
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number ...	14.45
Upgrade Client Computers .....	14.46
Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code .....	14.46
Uninstall SP 5.0 from Original Computer.....	14.47

---

Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - CUSTOM SPLIT	
INSTALLATION .....	14.48
Before You Begin .....	14.49
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords	
on the Application Computer .....	14.49
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0	
Server on the Application Computer .....	14.50
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server	
Computer .....	14.51
Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft	
SQL Server Enterprise Manager .....	14.51
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard .....	14.53
Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases .....	14.54
Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System .....	14.54
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures	
to Secure Perfect 6.0 File Server Computer .....	14.56
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number ...	14.56
Upgrade Client Computers .....	14.58
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application	
Code .....	14.58
Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0	
- CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT .....	14.59
Before You Begin .....	14.60
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords .....	14.60
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0	
Server .....	14.61
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server	
Computer .....	14.62
Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft	
SQL Server Enterprise Manager .....	14.62
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard .....	14.64
Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases .....	14.65
Uninstall Secondary Nodes .....	14.65
Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Application and License	
Your System .....	14.66
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures	
to Secure Perfect 6.0 File Server Computer .....	14.67
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number ...	14.68
Upgrade Additional Client Computers .....	14.70
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application	
Code .....	14.70
Upgrading Client Computers .....	14.71
Stop Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Client Computer .....	14.71
Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Software .....	14.72
Configuration Notes - Ensuring Success .....	14.73

**Appendix A: Diagnostics and Troubleshooting ..... A.1**

Turning on Diagnostics .....	A.2
Creating a Logfile .....	A.2
Viewing the Diagnostics Logs .....	A.3
Remote Diagnostics .....	A.4
Questions and Answers .....	A.4
Installing Sequence for Secure Perfect 6.0 .....	A.4
Secure Perfect 6.0 Client Connection and Startup .....	A.5
Secure Perfect 6.0 User Questions .....	A.6
Hardware Questions .....	A.9

**Appendix B: OPTIONALS: Special Hardware  
and Software ..... B.1**

Installing Secure Perfect on a Thin Client Terminal Server ...	B.2
Setting Up a Digi Serial-Port Expander .....	B.4
Setting Up pcANYWHERE .....	B.5
Setting Up Dial-Up Modems .....	B.6
Installing Access 2002 on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Servers .....	B.7

**Appendix C: OPTIONAL: CCTV Interfaces ..... C.1**

Software Requirements .....	C.2
Burle Allegiant System .....	C.2
Setup Overview .....	C.3
Hardware Requirements .....	C.4
Installation: Burle Allegiant .....	C.6
Configuring Alarms .....	C.8
Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms .....	C.9
Pelco System .....	C.11
Setup Overview .....	C.11
Hardware Requirements .....	C.12
Installation: Pelco .....	C.14
Configuring Alarms .....	C.16
Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms .....	C.17
Kalatel System .....	C.18
Setup Overview .....	C.19
Hardware Requirements .....	C.20
Installation: Kalatel .....	C.22
Configuring Alarms .....	C.24



---

Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms .....	C.25
American Dynamics System .....	C.26
Setup Overview .....	C.27
Hardware Requirements .....	C.28
Installation: American Dynamics .....	C.30
Configuring Alarms .....	C.32
Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms .....	C.32
Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms .....	C.34
Monitoring .....	C.35
Diagnostics .....	C.36
Removal of CCTV Client Interface .....	C.36
 <b>Appendix D: OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros.....</b>	 <b>D.1</b>
Installing FlashTool .....	D.2
Flashing the Micros .....	D.3
List of Micros .....	D.3
'Flash Micro' - Flashing Micros that have SP3.x or Later Firmware .....	D.4
FlashTool - Flashing Micros in Maintenance Mode or SP Firmware Earlier than SP3.x .....	D.6
 <b>Appendix E: Dell PowerEdge RAID Level 1 Recovery .....</b>	 <b>E.1</b>
Overview .....	E.2
Disclaimer .....	E.2
Recovery .....	E.3
What You Will Need .....	E.3
Replacing a Failed Hard Drive .....	E.4
Installing OpenManage Server Assistant .....	E.4
Installing the Operating System .....	E.5
Installing Dell OpenManage RAID Array Manager .....	E.5
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 .....	E.7
What's Next? .....	E.7
 <b>Appendix F: Installing Printers .....</b>	 <b>F.1</b>
Connecting Printers .....	F.2
 <b>Software Defect Report</b>	
 <b>Customer Survey</b>	



# Chapter 1: Introduction to Secure Perfect 6.0

Welcome to Secure Perfect 6.0! This manual provides information for system administrators to set up, install, and configure the Secure Perfect 6.0 system.

Throughout this manual, reference to Secure Perfect is represented as “SP” in text content to avoid repetition where the product name and /or version may have already been established.



In this chapter:

[“Quick Start Guide” on page 1.2](#)

[“Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements” on page 1.3](#)

[“Operating Systems and Configuration Summary” on page 1.5](#)

[“Before You Begin” on page 1.6](#)

[“What's New in Secure Perfect 6.0?” on page 1.8](#)

[“Installation and Setup Outlines” on page 1.12](#)

[“Notational and Typographical Conventions in this Guide” on page 1.20](#)

[“Related Documentation” on page 1.21](#)

[“Training Sources” on page 1.21](#)

## Quick Start Guide

### New Installation

#### 1. Install Operating System (choose one)

*[“Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server” on page 2.1](#)*

*[“Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Computer” on page 3.1](#)*



#### 2. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 (choose one)

*[“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software” on page 4.1](#)*

*[“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment” on page 5.1](#)*

*[“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition” on page 6.1](#)*

*[“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients” on page 7.1](#)*



#### 3. License

*[“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1](#)*



Also, refer to **[“Installation and Setup Outlines” on page 1.12.](#)**

## Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements

**NOTE:** Your Secure Perfect 6.0 system WILL NOT install unless minimum requirements have been met.

### Hardware

The following are recommended minimum hardware requirements:

- ☐ Intel® Pentium® III 9xx MHz
- ☐ 512 MB RAM for Server Computers  
256 MB RAM for Client Computers
- ☐ SVGA Monitor, 1024 by 768 resolution, 16-Bit High Color
- ☐ 101 Keyboard
- ☐ Mouse or Trackball device
- ☐ Network card
- ☐ 150 MB hard drive space for Secure Perfect with a default database
- ☐ Client Computer: If using Imaging and a video camera (as the image source), an approved image capture card

Hard drive space will vary depending on your system environment. If you elect to partition your hard drive, verify that sufficient space remains in your system drive for your program files to load properly.

**NOTE:** If using the Digital Video Surveillance option, increasing the processor speed and memory may be required to increase performance in your specific system.

The following items are recommended:

- ☐ Approved modem(s) if using dial-up micro(s)
- ☐ Support modem for pcANYWHERE

- ☐ Tape drive
- ☐ Digi® serial-port expander to provide additional ports if using micro(s) and/or CCTV devices

## **Software**

The following are recommended minimum software requirements:

- ☐ One of the following, based on the system that you purchased:
  - Microsoft Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server and applicable Service Packs
    - Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition (Service Pack auto installs with Secure Perfect 6.0.)
  - Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional (Service Pack auto installs with Secure Perfect 6.0.)
    - OPTIONAL: Microsoft Office Windows XP Access 2002 or Microsoft Access 2002
- ☐ Internet Explorer (6.0 or later with applicable Service Pack)

The following item is recommended:

- ☐ Symantec pcANYWHERE Version 9.3 or higher

## Operating Systems and Configuration Summary

The Secure Perfect 6.0 software is supported by operating systems as listed in [Table 1-1: “Operating Systems and Configuration Summary”](#).

**Table 1-1: Operating Systems and Configuration Summary**

Operating System	Configuration
Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Secure Perfect Server Software</li><li><b>Cluster technology or Global Edition selections in the custom-level installation provide new architecting options.</b></li><li>Allows database and file Server to be placed on separate Windows Server computers.</li><li>Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition Database (user provided) and applicable Service Pack (auto installs with Secure Perfect 6.0).</li><li>Imaging: The feature is installed but not recommended for production as an Imaging workstation.</li><li>Clients: Secure Perfect supports 25 system-wide clients (any or all can be configured as communications clients for hosting micros).</li><li>Micros: Secure Perfect supports 256 system-wide micros (32 on the server and up to 64 per communications client).</li></ul>
Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Secure Perfect Server Software</li><li>Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine (MSDE) and applicable SQL Service Pack (auto installed with Secure Perfect software).</li><li>Imaging: The feature is installed on the server as an Imaging workstation.</li><li>Clients: The system supports five system-wide clients (any five can also be configured as communications clients for hosting micros).</li><li>Micros: The system supports 32 system-wide micros (32 on the server or up to 16 per communications client).</li></ul>
Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Secure Perfect Client Software</li><li>Imaging: The option is installed.</li></ul>

## Before You Begin

**NOTE:** You will not be able to successfully complete your Secure Perfect 6.0 installation without access to the GE Security Web site. If you do not have Web access, call GE Security Customer Support at 1-800-428-2733 for assistance.

1. You will need a valid GE Security Customer Support Web site login in order to enable the Secure Perfect 6.0 licensing program. The steps for obtaining a login are detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#), in the section entitled “Obtaining the License” on page 8.3.
2. If you received a Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security:
  - Your Server computer is preloaded with the operating system, hardware, Symantec™ pcANYWHERE™, Microsoft SQL Server 2000® Standard Edition or MSDE, default Secure Perfect 6.0 database, Internet Explorer®, and Secure Perfect 6.0 application.
  - Your client computer is preloaded with the operating system, pcANYWHERE, Internet Explorer, and Secure Perfect 6.0 application.
  - Your system is licensed according to your purchased items such as number of clients, number of readers, and number of Imaging clients.

At this time, you are ready to go to [Chapter 9 - Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0](#).

3. Several optional features are available for your Secure Perfect system:
  - DVR Surveillance is an integrated event-driven video recording option, enabling you to access live and recorded video, and initiate camera control at any workstation within a Secure Perfect system.
  - CCTV interfaces are available for your Secure Perfect 6.0 system. You can automatically control supported CCTV cameras based on alarm events within Secure Perfect 6.0. For details, refer to [“Optional: CCTV Interfaces” on page 16.1](#).
  - Microsoft Access 2002 can be installed and used solely in creating custom reports. Refer to [“Installing Access 2002 on](#)



[Windows 2000 Professional/Windows XP Professional Servers” on page 16.9.](#)

- Visitor System Interface Capability Powered by PassagePoint Software of Stopware, Inc OR Access Sentry CI<sup>3</sup> enables visitor badging and lobby management software to interface with Secure Perfect. This interface is purchased separately and licensed through Secure Perfect. For complete details, contact your GE Security Sales Representative.
- Report Commander for Secure Perfect, Web browser based reporting feature for designing custom reports using Internet Explorer, using multiple data sources, and accessing through Secure Perfect. This option is purchased separately and licensed through Secure Perfect. For complete details, contact your GE Security Sales Representative.
- Support for Thin Client virtual workstation technology. The Thin Client installation executable is included on the Secure Perfect CD.

## What's New in Secure Perfect 6.0?

### **Secure Perfect Global Edition Software:**

Secure Perfect 6.0 introduces Global Edition software. SQL Server 2000 Replication services are used to distribute the data from a Global Server to Regional Servers. Secure Perfect installation creates the necessary components for a replicated system, configuring publications and subscriptions at each level. The Global Database Server is the 'main' Secure Perfect database server. The term 'main' as used in this context means that the Global Database Server acts as a hub for all replication activity. This Global Server hosts a Distributor whose role is to store history and miscellaneous information about merge replication. When the Distributor is created on a database, it generates its own database to store information. Once publishing is enabled on the Global Server, it is able to control and monitor publications and subscriptions as well as the starting and stopping of replication agents. Regional Database Servers act as 'client' database servers. They have the ability to subscribe to publications located on the Global Server. These Regional Servers operate independent of the Global Server for a period of time as necessary. Subscriptions are 'pushed' to each Regional Server by the Global Server. This means that the Regional Servers are not required to request updated data from the Global Server, because updates are periodically supplied to Regional Servers according to a set schedule. Replication intervals are configurable through SQL Server Enterprise Manager user interface. Data is continually synchronized by implementing this customized replication configuration. Refer to [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition](#), for a terminology list and complete description of this feature. Also refer to Global Edition Regional Configuration Rules and Replication and Synchronization Conflicts in the Help file.

### **Region Form:**

This form is only available in Secure Perfect Global Edition systems. This form allows you to modify the frequency intervals for database synchronization intervals between Regional Database Servers and the Global Database Server.

**Region Selection:** This is a new field on the Client Form, Client Tab. To locate a particular Server or client, you are able to select a Server name from the Region drop-down list. Perform a Search to display the clients associated with the selected Region.

### **Manual Mode Control:**

This feature allows the operator to select all or individual micros for immediate mode change. The current mode of the micro is reflected in real time on the Mode tab of the Manual Control Form as well as the Mode column of the Micro Utility Form.

### **Intrusion Zone Arm Delay Time:**

This setting option delays the arming of an intrusion zone. The time delay can be used by a person to exit a monitored area before it is armed.

### **Secure Perfect Record Updates:**

**Mass Updates:** This feature allows the operator to simultaneously update specific settings on a group of records within Secure Perfect. Mass updates is a new feature of the Person Form and Badge Form. This is very helpful when a number of records for a single form require the identical parameter change. Certain rules apply and are listed in the topic, Mass Update, of the Secure Perfect Help file.

**Auto Update Config:** This feature allows you to configure your Secure Perfect network computer for automatic notification and installation of the latest Quick Fixes and Service Packs, using the SP Auto Update Configuration Form, that displays when you select Auto Update on the Administration menu.

**Badge Aliasing:** Badge alias numbers saved to the Secure Perfect system are automatically assigned a preceding numerical digit. Refer to Badge Alias Tab.

### **Low Battery Alarm:**

This is the 11th DI on a Micro/PX-2000 or Micro/PXN-2000 microcontroller. If power is off and the backup battery is running low, the micro sends an alarm transaction to the Alarm Monitor form. The alarm displays until the battery is reset by recharging or the micro is powered back on. Refer to DI Board Records Creation in the Secure Perfect Help file.

### **Auto Unlock:**

This option prevents a schedule from unlocking a door until a valid badge is presented. When a valid badge is presented to the reader for the first time during the current schedule, the door unlocks for the first time, and the schedule is now in place, as configured. If no valid access has been detected from start of schedule to current time, micro will continue to wait for valid badge access before implementing the schedule. Configure this option on the Reader Form, Functions Schedule tab.

### **Password Security Enhancements:**

**Active Directory Password Authentication:** This field on the Operator Form, Operator tab, allows the user to validate their logon using the Server authentication. This authentication overrides any password parameters entered through Secure Perfect; therefore, if this option is available, Secure Perfect Password Authentication options will not be available. The Active Directory network domain controller authenticates this operator name and password. The next time this operator logs in to Secure Perfect, the network password can be entered for access to the Secure Perfect system. (The user cannot log in to the local computer; the user will log in to the Domain.) Secure Perfect validates the user login ID and password against the specified Active Directory, and not the Secure Perfect database.

**Enhanced Password Requirements:** Features were added to the Operator tab of the Operator Form and Password tab of the Parameter Form, for setting up specific operator password parameters. The configured parameters display on the Change Password form.

### **Video Enhancements:**

**Saving Video Option Added to Digital Video Viewer:** Video segments can be saved as an individual file, in 60D or AVI formats. You now have the capability of capturing a still image and saving as a JPG file. Refer to the DVR Help file for additional information.

**Additional Video Search Features:** Parameters set on the Motion tab of the Digital Video Search form allow you to select a specific area of a video image. The image displayed on the Search grid was captured from live or previously recorded video. A grid overlay allows you to select a portion of the image and search the DVR hard drive, based on the selected criteria.

### **Host/Micro Encryption:**

Encryption options are now available for your micro data exchange. Encryption protects the host-to-micro exchange of information. The assignment of encryption keys is accomplished on the Security tab of the Micro Form. This feature allows DES and DESIII communication between a host SP system and a network or network + dialup micro. Refer to the Secure Perfect Help for additional information.

**Secure Perfect Database Utilities:**

Database Utilities compares your database against a valid Secure Perfect database and auto corrects any missing or incorrect schema properties that exist. This function is very useful during Secure Perfect 2.1 to 6.0 conversions. The utility runs automatically during a database create and convert process. The executable file DatabaseIntegrity.exe installed with Secure Perfect and resides in the Secure Perfect folder. This utility can be run manually if you want to check your database integrity.

**Auto Shutdown of Client Services:**

If a client does not host devices or is not a backup for device redundancy, services are automatically shut down when a client closes the Secure Perfect application. This allows another client to use that license seat.

**Badge Form User Fields Tab:**

This tab on the Badge Form allows you to assign user fields to a particular badge.

## Installation and Setup Outlines

Before you proceed, make sure that your peripheral system hardware (such as micros, readers, and network lines) is installed and running.

The tables that follow outline the steps to set up a Secure Perfect 6.0 system.

Refer to the appropriate table for the system that you purchased.

- ☐ **Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:** Refer to [“Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition Computer”](#) on page 1.13.
- ☐ **Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client:** Refer to [“Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client”](#) on page 1.15.
- ☐ **Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0:** Refer to [Table 1-4, “Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0,”](#) on page 1.17.
- ☐ **Windows Clustering Technologies:** Refer to [“Pre-Installation Checklist”](#) on page 5.2.
- ☐ **Secure Perfect Global Edition:** Refer to [“Pre-Installation Checklist”](#) on page 6.7.

Unless otherwise noted, details for each step can be found in the chapters that follow.

## Preparing a Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server

**NOTE:** If you are converting from a previous version of Secure Perfect software, refer now to the appropriate upgrade section of this manual or PDF upgrade document.

**Table 1-2: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition Computer**

Task	Reference
A. Check minimum hardware and software requirements.	<a href="#">page 1.3</a>
B. Install network board.	<a href="#">page 2.3</a>
C. Determine server type.	<a href="#">page 2.3</a>
D. If it is part of an existing domain, you need to add this Server to the primary domain controller of that domain.	<a href="#">page 2.3</a>
E. Prepare operating system.	<a href="#">page 2.4</a>
F. Set up monitor.	<a href="#">page 2.5</a>
G. Install Microsoft SQL Server 2000.	<a href="#">page 2.7</a>
H. Verify SQL Server is running.	<a href="#">page 2.11</a>
I. Set SQL Server Agent service.	<a href="#">page 2.12</a>
J. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 software. - Create Secure Perfect database. - License the system.	<a href="#">page 4.1</a> <a href="#">page 4.1</a> <a href="#">page 4.64</a>
K. Verify that Secure Perfect Services are running	<a href="#">page 4.65</a>
L. Log in to the Server computer.	<a href="#">page 9.5</a>
M. OPTIONAL: Set up serial port expander.	<a href="#">page 16.3</a>
N. OPTIONAL: Install and set up Symantec pcANYWHERE.	<a href="#">page 16.5</a>
O. OPTIONAL: Set up the modems.	<a href="#">page 16.6</a>

**Table 1-2: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition Computer (Continued)**

Task		Reference
P.	If purchased, install and set up CCTV software and hardware.	<a href="#">page 16.1</a>
Q.	Install and set up printers.	<a href="#">page 9.1</a>
R.	Set up a tape drive.	Refer to instructions shipped with the tape drive.
S.	Add client computers, if applicable.	<a href="#">page 4.71.</a>



## Preparing a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client

**NOTE:** If you are converting from a previous version of Secure Perfect software, refer now to the upgrade section of this manual or appropriate upgrade PDF document.

**Table 1-3: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client \***

	Task	Reference
A.	Check minimum hardware and software requirements.	<a href="#">page 1.3</a>
B.	Install network board.	<a href="#">page 3.3</a>
C.	If this server will be part of an existing domain, you will need to add it to the primary domain controller of that domain.	<a href="#">page 3.3</a>
D.	If you will be using a video camera as the image source, install the capture board.	<a href="#">page 3.4</a>
E.	Prepare operating system.	<a href="#">page 3.4</a>
F.	Set up monitor.	<a href="#">page 3.5</a>
G.	Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Software (includes MSDE 2000 with Service Pack 3a.)	<a href="#">page 4.1</a>
H.	Obtain license.	<a href="#">page 8.3</a>
I.	Enter the Secure Perfect 6.0 license key.	<a href="#">page 8.6</a>
J.	Verify that Secure Perfect Services are running.	<a href="#">page 4.65</a>
K.	Log in to the Secure Perfect Server computer.	<a href="#">page 9.5</a>
L.	If applicable, set up Imaging Logins.	<a href="#">page 18.1</a>
M.	Add clients to Secure Perfect 6.0 database from Secure Perfect Server computer.	<a href="#">page 4.71</a>
N.	OPTIONAL: Install Microsoft Office XP or Microsoft Access 2002.	<a href="#">page 16.9</a>

**Table 1-3: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client \***

	Task	Reference
O.	OPTIONAL: If you are planning to add micros or use CCTV, set up the serial port expander.	<a href="#">page 16.3</a>
P.	OPTIONAL: Install and set up Symantec pcANYWHERE.	<a href="#">page 16.5</a>
Q.	OPTIONAL: If you plan on using dial-up micros on this computer, set up the modems.	<a href="#">page 16.6</a>
R.	If purchased, install and set up the CCTV software and hardware.	<a href="#">page 16.1</a>
S.	Install and set up printers.	<a href="#">page 9.1</a>
T.	Set up a tape drive.	Refer to instructions shipped with the tape drive.
U.	Install Secure Perfect 6.0 on additional clients, if applicable.	<a href="#">page 7.1.</a>
*. Repeat the applicable steps in this table for each additional communication client computer.		

## Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0

**Table 1-4: Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0**

Task		Menu/Form	Information Source
1.	Log in.	File/Login	<a href="#">page 9.5</a>
2.	Set system parameters.	Administration/ Parameters	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
3.	OPTIONAL: Create facilities.	Administration/ Facility	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
4.	Set up clients.	Administration/ Client	<a href="#">page 4.71</a>
5.	Create permissions and operators.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
	A. Determine the permissions you require and create them.	Administration/ Permission	
	B. Create operator records	Administration/ Operator	
6.	Set up schedules and events.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
	A. Determine what schedules and events you need.		
	B. Set up the time schedules.	Administration/Time Schedule	
	C. Set up the event schedules.	Administration/ Event Schedule	

**Table 1-4: Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0 (Continued)**

	Task	Menu/Form	Information Source
D.	Set up mode schedules.	Administration/ Mode Schedule	
7.	Set up devices.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
A.	Configure the micro.	Devices/Micro	
B.	Select readers to be used on this micro.	Devices/Readers	
C.	Set up digital inputs (DI).	Devices/Digital Input	
D.	Create alarm instructions.	Administration/ Alarm Instruction	
E.	Set up alarm groups.	Devices/Alarm Groups	
F.	Activate alarms to be used on this micro.	Devices/Alarms	
G.	Create digital (DO) groups.	Devices/Digital Output Groups	
H.	If necessary, modify DOs used on this micro.	Devices/Digital Outputs	
I.	Flash (download) firmware to the micro.	Flash Tool Application or Operations/Micro Utilities	<a href="#">page 16.1</a>
J.	Put the micro online and monitor communications.	Operations/Micro Utility	Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help.

**Repeat Step 7. for each micro.**



**Table 1-4: Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0 (Continued)**

	<b>Task</b>	<b>Menu/Form</b>	<b>Information Source</b>
8.	Create access rights, persons, and badges.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
	A. Determine which access rights you need and create them.	Personnel/Access Right	
	<b>If this is a new installation, complete B and C.</b>		
	B. Create person records.	Personnel/Person	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
	C. Create badge records.	Personnel/Badge	
	OPTIONAL:		
	D. Create intrusion zones	Administration/ Intrusion Zone	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.
9.	Back up the system.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide</i> on CD or Online Help.

# Notational and Typographical Conventions in this Guide

This manual uses certain notational and typographical conventions to make it easier for you to identify important information.

Table 1-1: Notational and Typographical Conventions

Item	Example
Menu Titles, Menu Items, Field Names, Form Titles	<b>Administration</b>
Keys	<b>Enter</b>
Buttons	<b>OK</b>
Text you enter	Micro 1
	To reduce the confusion between similar numbers and letters, namely the number 1 and the lowercase letter l along with the number 0 and the letter o, refer to the following list:
	1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
Side-bar or callout text	<i>Provides important information. When not part of a graphic, the text is displayed on the left side of the page.</i>
"Must Read" Sections	Recommended "Must Read" text blocks are shaded.
	This graphic is displayed to advise the user that failure to take or avoid a specified action could result in loss of data.
	This graphic is displayed to warn the user that failure to take or avoid a specific action could result in physical harm to the user or the hardware.

## Related Documentation



For more information, refer to the following:

*Information about menus, screens, and fields.*

### *Secure Perfect Online Help System*

The Online Help system provides reference information, such as screen and field descriptions, along with instructions for system administrator duties, such as configuring micros.

*All you want to know about the Micro/5.*

### *Micro/5 Installation Guide*

This guide provides mounting and installation instructions for the Micro/5 controller and its associated boards.

*All you want to know about the Micro/PX-2000.*

### *Micro/PX-2000 and PXN-2000 Installation Guide*

This guide provides mounting and installation instructions for the PX-2000 and PXN-2000 microcontrollers.

*PDFs on CD.*

These documents and others are included on the documentation CD in PDF format. You must have Adobe Acrobat Reader installed on your computer to view PDF documents. For your convenience, a copy of the Adobe Acrobat Reader software is included on the CD.

### *Microsoft®*

We recommend that you investigate the wide range of information available from Microsoft, covering such topics as Windows 2000 or Windows 2003, Microsoft SQL Server 2000, and networking. This information is available in both printed and electronic format.

### *Dell®*

If applicable, refer to your Dell documentation for hardware installation instructions.

Follow specific installation instructions for your brand of hardware.

## Training Sources



You may want to take advantage of the *XtremeLearning* library of convenient, comprehensive, and interactive Web-based training courses available through your GE Security Business Partner.

**NOTES**



## Chapter 2: Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server

This chapter provides instructions for a sample configuration of a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server computer. We recommend that you review the [“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 2.2](#), then review the sample configuration carefully BEFORE you begin the installation. If you are installing to a Cluster environment, refer to your Microsoft documentation and [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment” on page 5.1](#).



In this chapter:

- [“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 2.2](#)
- [“Installing the Network Board” on page 2.3](#)
- [“Preparing the Operating System” on page 2.4](#)
- [“Setting Up Your Monitor” on page 2.5](#)
- [“Enabling Distributed COM Configuration” on page 2.5](#)
- [“Items Specific to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server” on page 2.6](#)
- [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 2.7](#)
- [“What’s Next?” on page 2.16](#)

## Pre-Installation Checklist

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, these tasks were completed for you.*

➤ **To prepare your Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server computer, refer to this checklist of reminders:**

- ☐ Meet minimum recommended hardware and software requirements
- ☐ Install the network board
- ☐ Determine Server type
- ☐ Install Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server
  - Sections of this chapter include instructions specific to Windows 2003 Server.
  - When assigning a Server type, choose 'Stand-alone' or 'Member.'

*Important!*

- ☐ Set monitor resolution to a minimum of 800 by 600 (GE Security recommends 1024 by 768 pixels.)
- ☐ Enable **Distributed COM** Configuration Properties.
- ☐ Install MS SQL Server 2000

*Important!*

- You must have SQL Server installed prior to installing Secure Perfect 6.0 software.
- In 'Server and Client Tools,' you must enter SPSQL in the 'Instance Name' field.

- ☐ Verify SQL Server installation
- ☐ Set SQL Server Agent properties

*Important!*

SQL Server Agent must be running to keep the databases in optimal condition.

**NOTE:** You may experience other behavior based on the version of Windows you have installed. These are guidelines and these instructions are based on a SAMPLE configuration.

## Installing the Network Board

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the network board is installed for you.*

If you have not already done so, install the network board now. Follow the instructions included with the board.

## Determining Server Type

Before you continue, you will need to decide what type of server the Server computer will be in the network. Always consult with the network administrator before adding any computers to an existing network.

The Server computer can be:

1. Part of a new or existing workgroup.
2. Part of an existing domain. (See [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain” on page 2.3.](#))

Since the setup will be different depending on which option you choose, you will need to decide which server type applies before you can continue with the installation.

## Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

If the Server computer will be part of an existing domain, you will need to add the Server computer to the network. Since network configuration varies from company to company, see your network administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** If your Server and client computers participate in a workgroup, add the workgroup name during the installation. We suggest using SECUREPERFECT. Write down the server name and workgroup name as these are required during the client installation.

It is important that the Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on page 3.6](#) for more information or consult with your network administrator.

## Preparing the Operating System

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the operating system is installed for you.*

The Server computer **MUST** be running Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server. If it is not already installed on your system, you will need to install it now, along with the latest applicable Service Packs.

### Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server

This section represents an overview of the installation procedure and does not provide step-by-step instructions to install the operating system.

Insert the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Installation CD in your CD-ROM drive and follow the instructions provided by the Microsoft documentation.

During installation of the operating system, review the following items:

- You will be asked to select a file system type. For added security, we recommend that you select **NTFS**.
- On the **Licensing Modes** screen, select **Per Seat**.
- When selecting the **Networking Settings**, we recommend that you select **Typical Settings**. If you need to select **Custom Settings**, please consult your network administrator.
- For network services and binding, leave the default settings.
- At the **Server Type** screen, you may select either **Stand-alone** or **Member**.
- If you selected a server type of:
  - **Stand-alone**, this server has only its own database of users, and it processes logon requests by itself. It does not share account information with any other computer and cannot provide access to domain accounts.
  - **Member**, this server participates in a domain, but does not store a copy of the directory database. For a member server, permissions can be set on resources that allow users to connect to the server and use its resources. Resource permissions can be granted for domain global groups and users as well as for local groups and users.

- For example, if you wish to group computers by department, you could set up an Accounting Workgroup. When viewing the network, you would see the Accounting Workgroup. If you double-clicked on that Workgroup, all computers in that Workgroup would be displayed.

For additional information, consult your Microsoft documentation.

## Setting Up Your Monitor

The minimum monitor resolution required for Secure Perfect 6.0 is 800 by 600. (GE Security recommends 1024 by 768 pixels.) Small Fonts **MUST** be selected on the **General** tab of the **Advanced** properties. If using Imaging, the minimum color resolution is High Color (16-bit).

➤ **To access the display settings:**

1. Right-click the desktop.
2. Select **Properties** from the menu.
3. Click the **Settings** tab in the **Display Properties** window.
4. Change the **Screen Area settings** to at least 800 by 600. GE Security recommends 1024 by 768 pixels.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

## Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If DCOM is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.

**Result:** The **Distributed COM Configuration Properties** window displays.

2. On the **Default Properties** tab, verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections. If not set, select the check box to enable. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Proceed to [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 2.7](#).

## Items Specific to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server

These items are unique to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:

### 1. Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If **DCOM** is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled**.

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections on Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.

**Result:** **Component Services** displays.

2. Double-click **Components Services** and then click **Computers**.
3. Right-click **My Computer** and then scroll to **Properties**.

**Result:** **My Computer Properties** window displays.

4. Click the **Default Properties** tab.

5. Verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your IT Department.
6. Click **OK** to accept and close the window.

## 2. Windows User Password

When installing and configuring Windows 2003 Server, the user administrator **MUST** be assigned a password. For Secure Perfect to work correctly once installed, all Windows login IDs used in conjunction with Secure Perfect should have an assigned password. DO NOT leave blank.

## 3. Matching User Information

If any computer within the Secure Perfect system is running Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server, then ALL computers in that system must use a matching user name and password at login in order to communicate.

## 4. User Logon Modifications

In the **Control Panel, User Settings, Change the way users log on or off**, disable the Windows 2003 logon **Welcome Screen** and **Fast User Switching**. If needed, these settings can be re-enabled after installation of Secure Perfect is complete.

## 5. Enable Network Folder Sharing

In the **Control Panel, Network Connection**, run the **Network Setup Wizard**, and enable network file/folder sharing.

Proceed with [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 2.7](#).

# Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000

The SQL Server program stores and controls the Secure Perfect 6.0 databases. If you do not have SQL Server installed on the Server computer that will store your databases, you must install it now.

**NOTE:** The SQL Server software is user supplied and is not included as part of a Secure Perfect 6.0 system.

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, SQL Server is installed and configured for you.*

➤ **To install Microsoft SQL Server:**

1. Insert the SQL CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

**Result:** The Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition window automatically displays.

2. We recommend that you select **Read the Release Notes**. This displays the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Readme file, in Notepad. When you are finished, exit and continue below.

3. Select **SQL Server 2000 Components**.

4. Select **Install Database Server**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server 2000 Welcome** window displays.

5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Computer Name** window displays.

6. The local computer will be selected by default. The dialog box contains the name of the default local computer. Do not change the default setting since you want to install Microsoft SQL Server 2000 on the local computer.

7. Click **Next** to accept the **Local Computer** option.

8. On the **Installation Selection** screen, select **Create a new Instance, or install Client Tools** and click **Next**.

**Result:** You are prompted for your User Information.

➤ **To enter the User Information:**

1. Enter a **Name** and **Company**, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Microsoft End User License Agreement** displays.

2. Review the agreement and click **Yes** to accept the agreement.



3. The **License Key information for SQL Server 2000** window displays.
4. Enter the CD-Key number as displayed on the back of the CD jewel case, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Installation Definition** screen displays.

5. Select **Server and Client Tools** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Instance Name** window displays with the **Default** check box selected.

6. Clear the check box.

*Important!*

7. Enter `SPSQL` in the **Instance Name** field. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Setup Type** screen displays.

➤ **To configure a typical setup:**

1. Select **Typical** for setup type. You have the option to change the **Destination Paths** for the program files and data files. We recommend that you accept the default locations, and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Services Accounts** window displays.

2. You are prompted to select an **Account Login** and **Service Setting**.

- Select **Use the same account for each service (Autostart SQL Server Service)**.
- Select **Use the Local System Account**

Then, click **Next**.

3. From the **Authentication Mode** window, you **MUST** select **Mixed Mode (Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)**.

In **Add Password for the 'sa' login**, enter `master` or create a unique password as the password for the administrator account. Enter a second time to confirm. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of `master` was assigned.)

**NOTE:** We strongly suggest that you assign a unique password of your choice.

This is the 'sa' user password, used later in the installation, during creation of the Secure Perfect database.

4. Write the password down, then store it in a safe place as you will be asked for it again later.

5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** A dialog box displays a statement, Setup has enough information to prompt you for the Licensing Mode Information and then start copying the program files.

6. Click **Next** to proceed.

**Result:** The **Choose Licensing Mode** screen displays. GE Security recommends selecting **Per Seat License**. (All GE Security-installed systems are installed with **Per Seat License**.) Refer to your SQL Server 2000 license agreement to find out how many users you are authorized, according to the system you purchased. Enter that number as the number of devices.

However, if you purchased SQL Server 2000 with a processor license, select **Processor License** and enter the number of processors (CPUs) in your Server computer. If you have a problem choosing a licensing mode, refer to your Microsoft manuals or consult your network administrator for assistance.

7. Click **Continue**.

**Result:** A **Shutting Down Tasks** window may display.

8. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The system starts to copy files. Various installation windows display along with a progress bar. This step takes a considerable length of time.

9. A **Setup Complete** window displays, stating that the installation of this instance of SQL Server 2000 has completed on your computer.

10. Click **Finish** and remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.

11. You must shut down and restart your computer in order for the installation to take effect.

## Verifying Microsoft SQL Server Installation

When restarted, the system will automatically start SQL Server. Log in as administrator. You may want to verify the installation. You have two options available:

- Check the taskbar.
- Check the Services Form.

### Verify SQL Installation Using the Taskbar

➤ **To verify that SQL Server service is running:**

In the taskbar status area, an icon will display, a computer with a green arrow.



### Verify SQL Installation Using the Services Form

➤ **To verify SQL Server using the Services screen:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools, then Component Services**.
2. Click **Services (Local)**.
3. Locate the service **MSSQL\$SPSQL**.
  - The status should read **Started** which means that the service is running.
  - If it is blank, then the service is not running. You cannot proceed with the installation unless the service is running. Check your SQL Server documentation for more information on troubleshooting.
4. Exit the window.

## Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Enterprise Manager

The **SQL Server Agent** service must be running to keep the Secure Perfect 6.0 databases in optimal condition.

► **To set properties of the SQL Server Agent service:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Locate the Server computer name on which you will be installing Secure Perfect 6.0. Expand the folder by clicking on the plus sign.
3. Select and expand the **Management** folder.
4. A red dot on the **SQL Server Agent** folder indicates that it has not started. Select **SQL Server Agent**, then right-click and select **Start** on the menu to start the services.

**Result:** The red dot is replaced by a green arrow in the navigation tree.

5. Now, you have to set **SQL Server Agent** service properties. Select **SQL Server Agent**, then right-click and select **Properties** from the menu.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Agent Properties** window displays.

6. Do not change any settings on the **General** tab unless instructed by the Database Administrator. Select the **Advanced** tab and select the **Auto restart SQL Server if it stops unexpectedly** and **Auto Restart SQL Server Agent if it stops unexpectedly** check boxes.
7. Click **OK**.

**Result:** A message may display, **One or more of the changes you have made will not take effect until SQL Server Agent is restarted. Do you want to stop and restart SQL Server Agent now?** We recommend that you stop and restart SQL Server Agent now.

8. Click **Yes** to stop and restart SQL Server Agent.

9. When a dialog displays **SQL Server Agent was restarted successfully**, click **OK**.
10. Exit **Enterprise Manager**.
11. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Component Services**. Select and double-click to expand the list of services.
12. Scroll down the list of services to select **SQLAgent\$SPSQL**, then right-click and select **Properties** from the menu.

**Result:** The **SQLAgent\$SPSQL Properties** window displays.

13. On the **General** tab, select **Automatic** from the **Startup type** drop-down list. Do not change any other tab or setting.
14. Click **OK**.

**Result:** **SQLServerAgent Properties** exits.

15. Exit **Component Services**.
16. Continue with [“Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Service Manager”](#) on page 2.13

## Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Service Manager

### ► To verify and set SQL Server services:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Startup**, then **Service Manager**.
- Result:** The **SQL Server Service Manager** window displays.
2. If not displayed, from the **Server** drop-down list, select the correct computer name with the SPSQL instance name.
3. If not already displayed, from the **Services** drop-down list, select **SQL Server**.

**Result:** A green arrow displays on the computer image, indicating the service is running. Verify that **Auto-start service when OS starts** check box is selected.



**Figure 2-1. SQL Server Service Manager - Enterprise Server**

4. Refer to [Figure 2-1](#). The Server computer name and service status display at the bottom of the dialog box.

► **To verify and set SQL Server Agent:**

1. From the **Services** drop-down list, select **SQL Server Agent**. The **SQL Server Agent** must be running to keep the Secure Perfect 6.0 databases in optimal condition.



**Figure 2-2. SQL Server Service Manager - SQL Server Agent**

2. In [Figure 2-2](#), the Server computer name and service status are **Stopped**, as displayed at the bottom of the dialog box. To change the status, click **Start/Continue** and then select **Auto-start service when OS starts**.

**Result:** A green arrow displays on the computer image, indicating the service is running. In the future, the service will automatically start when the operating system shuts down and restarts.

3. Exit **SQL Server Services Manager**.
4. **We recommend that you DO NOT install the Microsoft SQL Service Pack at this time, if you are about to install Secure Perfect 6.0.** The latest supported version is Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a, and auto installs during installation of the Secure Perfect 6.0 software.
5. Remove the Microsoft SQL CD from the CD-ROM drive.
6. Continue with [“What’s Next?” on page 2.16](#).

## Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack

### Typical Server/Client Architecture

**NOTE:** We recommend that you do not install the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack if you are about to install SP 6.0. If you install the Service Pack OUTSIDE of the SP installation, this is an abbreviated list of instructions to assist you.

➤ **To install SQL Server Service Pack 3a on a typical Server/Client Architecture:**

1. Back up the SQL databases: master, model, and msdb.
2. Insert the Microsoft Updates CD into your CD-ROM drive.
3. Navigate to the drive, typically, `D:\ SP ENT SERVER\SQL Server 2000 Standard SP 3a\sql2ksp3a.exe`
4. Follow instructions as prompted, using the recommended choices as described during the installation process.

5. When complete, AGAIN, back up your SQL master, model, and msdb databases, since installation of the Service Pack 3a has updated and altered their contents.
6. Reboot your computer. You are now ready to install the Secure Perfect software.
7. Refer to [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#).

## Cluster Environment

Contact the Enterprise Services Department of GE Security at (561) 998-6168, to discuss Windows Clustering setup and installation before installing Secure Perfect 6.0. GE Security Sales or Customer Support, at (561) 998-6100, can provide additional details of these services and a quotation applicable to your system configuration.

If you are installing Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack to a Windows Cluster, you must apply the SQL Service Pack 3a before installing Secure Perfect 6.0. Consult the Microsoft documentation received with the SQL Server Service Pack, for instructions.

## What's Next?

Proceed to [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#).



## Chapter 3: Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Computer

This chapter provides specific information about setting up a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional computer as a Secure Perfect Server computer or client computer. We recommend that you read these sections carefully BEFORE you begin the installation. Perform the steps in the order they display. Each client computer will run the Secure Perfect 6.0 application and Imaging package.



In this chapter:

[“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 3.2](#)

[“Installing the Network Board” on page 3.3](#)

[“Preparing the Operating System” on page 3.4](#)

[“Setting Up Your Monitor” on page 3.5](#)

[“Defining User Accounts” on page 3.7](#)

[“Assigning User Passwords” on page 3.7](#)

[“Item Specific to Windows 2000 Professional” on page 3.8](#)

[“Items Specific to Windows XP Professional” on page 3.8](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 3.10](#)

## Pre-Installation Checklist

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, these tasks were completed for you.*

➤ **To prepare your Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional computer, refer to this checklist of reminders:**

- ☐ Meet minimum recommended hardware and software requirements
- ☐ Install the network board
- ☐ Install Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional with appropriate Service Packs
- ☐ Set monitor resolution to a minimum of 800 by 600 (GE Security recommends 1024 by 768 pixels.)
- ☐ Set the Network Properties
- ☐ Set monitor resolution to a minimum of 800 by 600. (GE Security recommends 1024 by 768.)
- ☐ Enable **Distributed COM** Configuration Properties.
- ☐ Add Client computers to the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server Database

## Supported Microcontrollers

Secure Perfect 6.0 supports the following GE Security microcontrollers:

- Micro/5-PX
- Micro/5-PXN
- Micro/PX-2000
- Micro/PXN-2000

Serial-port expanders can be installed at any of the client computers to provide additional serial COM ports. COM ports can be used for either wiring direct-connect, communicating with dial-up micros via modems, or LAN connection to the microcontrollers. You **MUST** use GE Security-approved serial-port expanders. Currently, 8 and 16-port expanders are supported.

## Installing the Network Board

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the network board is installed for you.*

If you have not already done so, install the network board now. Follow the instructions included with the board. Verify that you are using the same network card speed as the existing network. Refer to the **Microsoft Installation Guide** for details of a network card configuration or obtain information at [www.microsoft.com/technet](http://www.microsoft.com/technet).

## Determining Computer Type

Before you continue, consult with the network administrator before adding any computers to an existing network.

The Professional computer can be:

1. Part of a new or existing workgroup.
2. Part of an existing domain. (See [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain” on page 3.3.](#))

Since the setup will be different depending on which option you choose, you will need to decide which type applies before you can continue with the installation.

## Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

If the Professional computer will be part of an existing domain, you will need to add the computer to the network. Since network configuration varies from company to company, see your network administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** If your Secure Perfect Server computer and client computers participate in a workgroup, add the workgroup name during the installation. We suggest using SECUREPERFECT. Write down the Server name and workgroup name as these are required during the client installation.

It is important that the Secure Perfect Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on](#)

[page 3.6](#) for more information or consult with your network administrator.

## OPTIONAL: Installing the Capture Card

*If you purchased this system with Imaging from GE Security, the FlashPoint card is installed and set up for you.*

A capture card is required only if you are using the capture feature of Imaging and you are using a video camera as the image source. Imaging installs with each Secure Perfect application installation. If you have not done so already, install the capture card now.

**NOTE:** You must use a GE Security-approved capture card.

Currently, GE Security supports the Integral Technologies capture cards. Contact your GE Security Sales Representative for supported models. For directions on installing this card, refer to the appropriate GE Security documents.

## Preparing the Operating System

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the operating system is installed for you.*

The Professional Secure Perfect Server computer **MUST** be running Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional with any applicable Service Packs. If it is not already installed on your system, you will need to install it now.

### Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional

This section represents an overview of the installation procedure and does not provide step-by-step instructions to install the operating system.

Insert the Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Installation CD in your CD-ROM drive and follow the instructions provided by the Microsoft documentation.

During the installation of the operating system, review the following items:

- You will be asked to select a file system type. For added security, we recommend that you select **NTFS**.

- Under the **Networking Settings** screen, we recommend that you select **Typical Settings**. If you need to select **Custom Settings**, please consult your network administrator.
- For network services and binding, leave the default settings.
- At the **Workgroup or computer domain** window, select one:
  - **No**, this computer is not on a network, or is on a network without a domain. Type a workgroup name in the following box.
  - **Yes**, make this computer a member of the following domain.
- Enter the workgroup or domain name in the **Workgroup or computer domain** field.

For additional information, consult your Microsoft documentation.

## Setting Up Your Monitor

The minimum monitor resolution required for Secure Perfect 6.0 is 800 by 600 (GE Security recommends 1024 by 768). Small Fonts **MUST** be selected on the **General** tab of the **Advanced** properties. If using Imaging, the minimum color resolution is High Color (16-bit).

➤ **To access the display settings:**

1. Right-click your mouse on the desktop.
2. Select **Properties** from the menu.
3. Click the **Settings** tab in the **Display Properties** window.
4. Change the **Screen Area settings** to at least 800 by 600. (GE Security recommends 1024 by 768 pixels.)
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

## Setting the Network Properties

It is important that the same network properties are used for both the Secure Perfect Server and Client systems.

► **To check the network settings:**

1. Right-click **My Network Places**.
2. Select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
3. Right-click the **Local Area Connection** icon and select **Properties**.
4. Select **Internet Protocol TCP/IP**.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Select one:

- **Obtain an IP address automatically**
- **Use the following IP address**

Secure Perfect 6.0 computers do not require static IP addresses.

**NOTE:** If you selected **Use the following IP address** option, you must obtain a valid IP address from the network administrator, or use a local IP address that no other computer is using in your network. Consult your network administrator for detailed instructions.

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to exit **Local Area Connection Properties**.
9. After Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional is installed, reboot the computer and make sure it is connected to the network. Verify that you do not have any hardware errors under **Device Manager**.

## Defining User Accounts

Windows 2000 requires that a user account be set up for each user on that computer and for each user accessing the Server remotely. This section addresses adding additional user accounts and assigning user passwords.

The **Users and Passwords** selection in **Control Panel** allows you to add users to your computer and to add users to a group. In Windows 2000 and Windows XP, permissions and user rights are usually granted to groups. By adding a user to a group, you give the user all the permissions and user rights assigned to that group.

For instance, a member of the Users group can perform most of the tasks necessary to do the job, such as logging on to the computer, creating files and folders, running programs, and saving changes to files. However, only a member of the Administrators group can add users to groups, change user passwords, or modify most system settings.

Adding additional users is **optional** but recommended since this clearly identifies each user in Windows.

**NOTE:** If you do choose to add additional users, you must assign them to the group 'SPAdmin.'

## Assigning User Passwords

GE Security recommends that you assign a password to all user accounts. This will avoid security permission issues when attempting to access remote client computers.

Refer to your Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional documentation for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.

## Item Specific to Windows 2000 Professional

This item is unique to Windows 2000 Professional.

### Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If **DCOM** is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.
2. On the **Distributed COM Configuration Properties** window, select the **Default Properties** tab, if not already selected.
3. Verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections. If not set, select the check box to enable. **DO NOT** alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
4. Click **OK** and close the window.

## Items Specific to Windows XP Professional

These items are unique to Windows XP Professional:

### 1. Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If **DCOM** is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections on Windows XP Professional:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.

**Result:** **Component Services** displays.



2. Double-click **Components Services** and then click **Computers**.
3. Right-click **My Computer** and then scroll to **Properties**.

**Result:** My Computer Properties window displays.

4. Click the **Default Properties** tab.
5. Verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
6. Click **OK** and close the window.

## 2. Windows XP User Password

When installing and configuring Windows XP Professional, the user Administrator **MUST** be assigned a password. For Secure Perfect to work correctly once installed, all Windows login IDs used with Secure Perfect should have an assigned password. DO NOT leave blank.

## 3. Matching User Information

If any computer within the Secure Perfect system is running Windows XP, then ALL computers in that system must use a matching user name and password at login in order to communicate.

## 4. User Logon Modifications

In the **Control Panel**, select **User Accounts**, and then **Change the way users log on or off**. Clear the following check boxes:

- **Use the Welcome Screen**
- **Use Fast User Switching**

If needed, these settings can be re-enabled after installation of Secure Perfect is complete.

## 5. Enable Network Folder Sharing

In the **Control Panel**, **Network Connections**, run the **Network Setup Wizard**, and enable network file/folder sharing.

## 6. Disable Simple File Sharing

In **Windows Explorer**, select **Tools, Folder Options**, and then the **View** tab. Scroll through the **Advanced settings** to display **Use simple file sharing**. Clear the check box to disable this feature.

## What's Next?

You are ready to install Secure Perfect 6.0. Refer to [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#).

## Chapter 4: Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software

This chapter includes instructions for installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software on Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server, and Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional computers. Follow instructions in the order presented. These instructions pertain to Secure Perfect editions: Enterprise Edition, Professional Edition, and eZ Edition.

**NOTE:** This Chapter is NOT for Global Edition installations. If you are installing a Secure Perfect Global Edition system, refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition” on page 6.1](#).



In this chapter:

[“Prepare to Install” on page 4.2](#)

[“TYPICAL Installation” on page 4.6](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Edition” on page 4.14](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Edition” on page 4.61](#)

[“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.64](#)

[“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 4.65](#)

[“Server Folder Structure” on page 4.67](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts” on page 4.70](#)

[“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 4.71](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 4.75](#)

## Prepare to Install

**NOTE:** Your Secure Perfect 6.0 system WILL NOT install unless minimum requirements have been met. Before you begin, refer to [“Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements”](#) on page 1.3 and [“Pre-Installation Checklist”](#) on page 2.2.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!					

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, Secure Perfect 6.0 is installed for you. Skip to [“Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0”](#) on page 9.1.*

➤ **To prepare your computer for installation of the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select `SPSQL` instance of SQL Server.
- When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the sa password `master`.
- When the **Backward Compatibility Checklist** displays, select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.

4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 4.4](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

## Selecting Installation Type

➤ **To continue, your next step is to select ONE type of installation:**

1. Select **Typical** or **Custom**.

If you select **Typical**:

#### **Typical Installation Type:**

The installation requires little user interaction and you do not need to make any special choices.

Follow instructions in ["TYPICAL Installation" on page 4.6.](#)

If you select **Custom**:

#### **Custom Installation Type:**

If you need to accomplish any one of the following tasks, you must select Custom:

- Use Badge Aliasing.
- Change the password for the default Secure Perfect user 'secure.'

**NOTE:** If you change the default Secure Perfect user password, all computers must use the identical Secure Perfect user replacement password.

- Select options for Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from the Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by the customer. Refer to ["Custom Configuration Options" on page 4.16](#) for possible options.

**Continue by proceeding to the section appropriate to your operating system:**

["CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Edition" on page 4.14](#)

["CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Edition" on page 4.61](#)

## TYPICAL Installation

➤ To continue with a Typical installation, follow the instructions below:

1. Click **Next**.
2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Server** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

**NOTE: ONLY Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:**

*Important!*

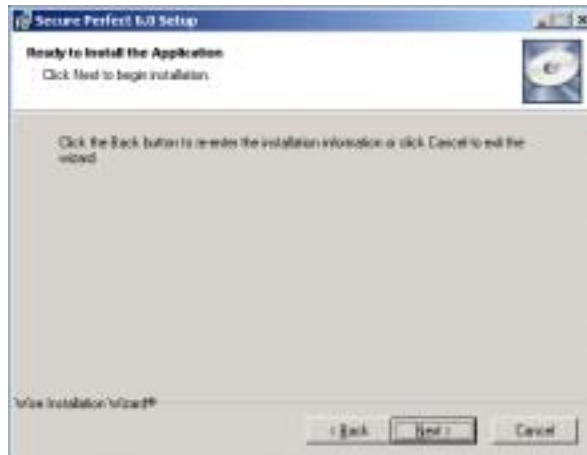
An SQL Server Password dialog box displays. You must enter the SQL Server 'sa' password in the dialog box. This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 2.9](#). Enter your previously assigned SQL password here. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of `master` was assigned for you.)

3. The default program folder is indicated. You may want to install Secure Perfect in another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice, for placement of Secure Perfect files.



## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-1](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-1. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

4. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This takes several minutes.

5. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.

➤ **To finish your installation, continue with one of the following Typical installation instructions, depending on the system you are installing:**

- [“Instructions Specific to Typical Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Installations” on page 4.8](#)

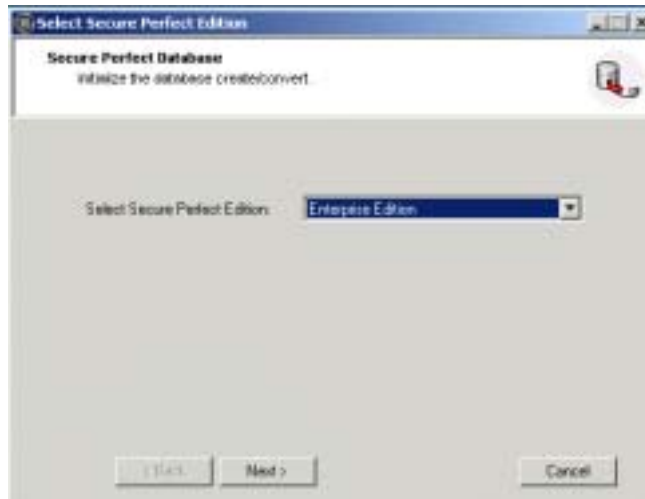
OR

- [“Instructions Specific to Typical Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Installations” on page 4.12](#)

## Instructions Specific to Typical Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Installations

➤ **To select Secure Perfect Edition:**

1. The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 4-2](#).



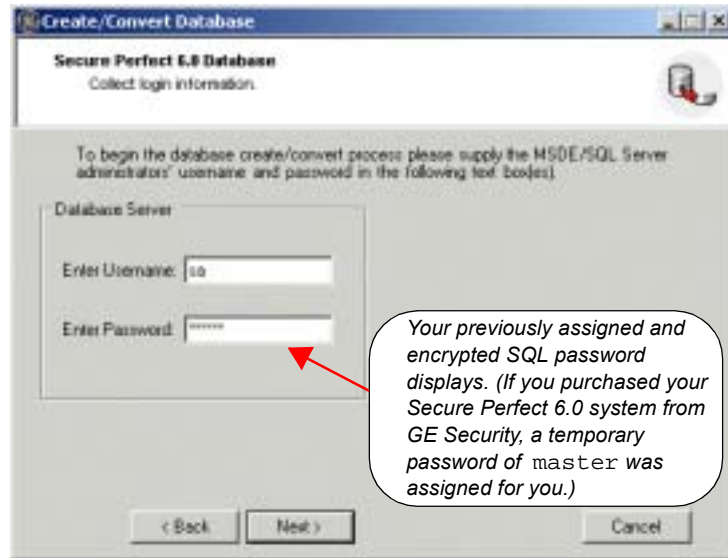
**Figure 4-2. Select Secure Perfect Edition**

2. Select **Enterprise Edition** and click **Next**.

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the database is created for you.*

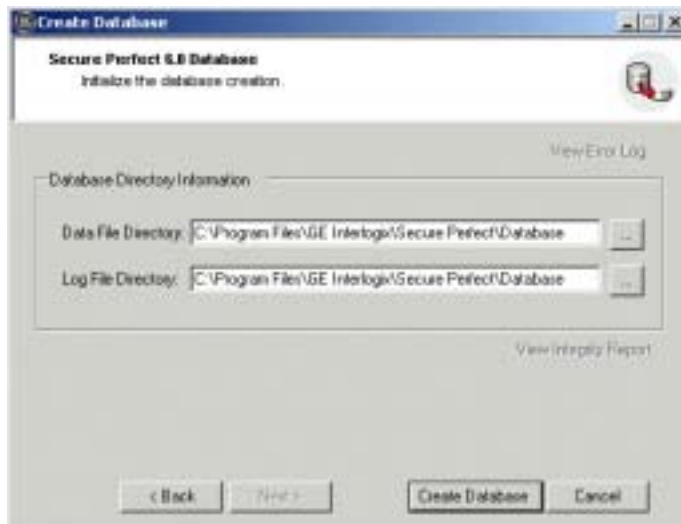
➤ **To create a database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 4-3 on page 4.9](#).





**Figure 4-3. Create/Convert Database Window**

2. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL **sa** password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE Security, a temporary password of **master** was assigned for you.)
3. Click **Next** to display the **Create Database** window, as in [Figure 4-4](#).



**Figure 4-4. Create Database Window**

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
  - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
  - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

**NOTE:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.
5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.

**NOTE FOR CONVERSIONS:** During a conversion, if a database already exists:

1. A warning message displays stating that this application is currently operating with an earlier version of Secure Perfect. Click **Yes**, you want to convert the database.

2. A second window displays your current Secure Perfect version. Click **Convert Database** to accept the required version and begin the database conversion.

6. When the database creation/conversion is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

**NOTE:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called `SPCreateDB.txt` is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.

7. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The dialog box closes. Installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 is complete. An **SP License Setup** window displays.

8. Operation of your Secure Perfect 6.0 system is possible at this time; however, the system will start and remain in Demo Mode until you properly license Secure Perfect. (Refer to [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence”](#) on page 8.10 for a description of Demo Mode.)
9. Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 4.64.

#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## Instructions Specific to Typical Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Installations

At this point, the Secure Perfect installation determines if `SPSQL` instance of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a need to be installed.

➤ **If the required software is not detected on your system:**

1. When the required software is not detected on your system, installation of MSDE and Service Pack 3a continues.

**Result:** When installation of MSDE is complete, the system **automatically** reboots. This process takes several minutes.

2. Log in as administrator user to continue the installation.
3. After the login, the database creation begins.

**NOTE FOR CONVERSIONS:** During a conversion, if a database already exists:

- a. You must select the Secure Perfect edition that you want to install.
  - b. You are prompted for your SQL 'sa' password. Your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password displays. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of `master` was assigned for you.
  - c. A warning message displays stating that this application is currently operating with an earlier version of Secure Perfect. Click **Yes**, you want to convert.
  - d. A window displays your current Secure Perfect version. Click **Convert Database** to accept the required version and begin the database creation.
4. A progress bar displays the process.
  5. When the database creation/conversion is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

6. The **SP License Setup** window displays along with a **Welcome** dialog box. We recommend that you license your system at this time. Click **OK** in the dialog box to continue.
7. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.64.](#)

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Edition

### Instructions Specific to Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server:

**Recommended for experienced software installers.**

**NOTE:** You MUST select **Custom** to achieve any of the following:

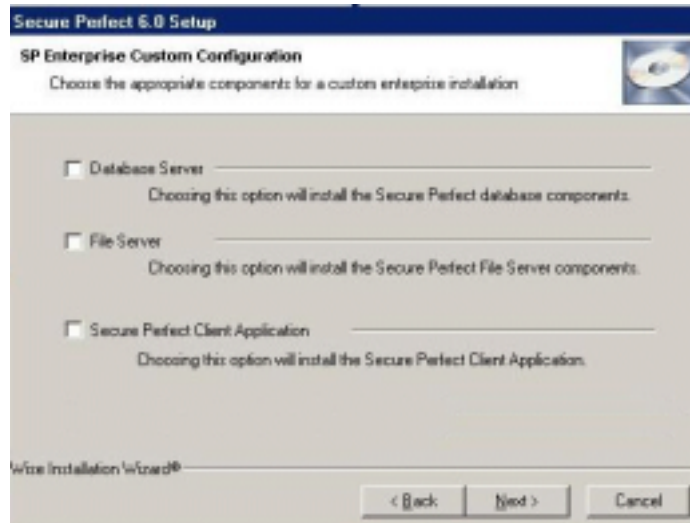
- Badge aliasing
- Changing the `secure` password.
- Selectively installing **Database Server**, **File Server**, or **Secure Perfect Application**. These configuration options allow Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by you.

Installing Secure Perfect in a Cluster environment requires special configuration. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment” on page 5.1](#). Contact the Enterprise Services Department of GE Security, at (561) 998-6168, to discuss Windows Clustering setup and installation before installing Secure Perfect 6.0. GE Security Sales or Customer Support, at (561) 998-6100, can provide additional details of these services and a quotation applicable to your system configuration.

➤ **To begin your Custom installation:**

1. When you select **Custom** as the type of installation and click **Next**, the **Custom Configuration** window displays for you to choose which Secure Perfect features to configure on this computer. The **Custom Configuration** window displays similar to [Figure 4-5 on page 4.15](#).





**Figure 4-5. Enterprise Server - Custom Configuration**

2. Select one or more of the options pertaining to the system you are installing:

**NOTE:** Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin.

**Database Server:** Selecting this option designates this Server as the Database Server. This Server is then used to store the three databases, SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory. An additional selection divides data files and transaction logs. The **Database Server** option is a prerequisite in order to install **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Application**.

**File Server:** Only Secure Perfect File Server components install. This Server stores the data files shared by clients on the Secure Perfect network. File shares include graphics, images, signatures, designs, and firmware. The File Server option is a prerequisite in order to install Secure Perfect Application.

**Secure Perfect Application:** Only the Secure Perfect application installs. Only Secure Perfect client file shares install. This includes the executable file, Secure Perfect services, and Secure Perfect DLLs.

3. When you have selected the appropriate options, click **Next**.

## Custom Configuration Options

**Recommended for experienced software installers.**

The scenarios in the following custom configurations are the result of selections made on the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window. Refer to [Figure 4-5 on page 4.15](#).

**Table 4-1: Custom Configuration Options**




**NOTE:** Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin. (Windows that display during installation are similar to the sample configurations presented.)

Scenario	Begin on Page:
1.	<a href="#">“Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application Configuration” on page 4.17</a>
2.	<a href="#">“Database Server and File Server Configuration” on page 4.26</a>
3.	<a href="#">“Database Server and Secure Perfect Application Configuration” on page 4.34</a>
4.	<a href="#">“Database Server Configuration” on page 4.41</a>
5.	<a href="#">“Each Component on a Separate Computer” on page 4.49</a>

**IMPORTANT:** When you select a scenario, be sure to complete all instructions for that scenario.

## 1. Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application Configuration

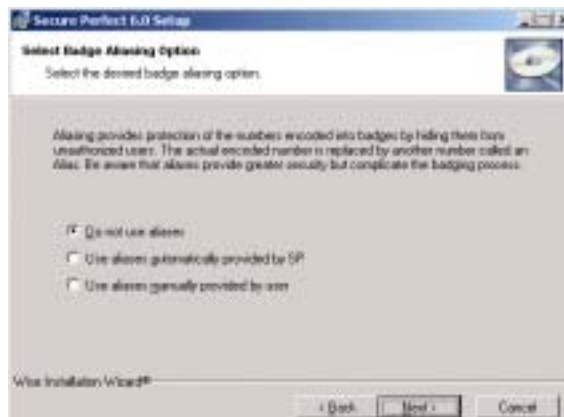
### Scenario 1: All Components on One Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server	✓		
Secure Perfect Application	✓		

**NOTE:** This configuration has all components installed on Computer 1. Although these are the same components as **Typical**, you chose **Custom** to use badge aliasing or change the 'secure' password.

➤ **If you selected Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

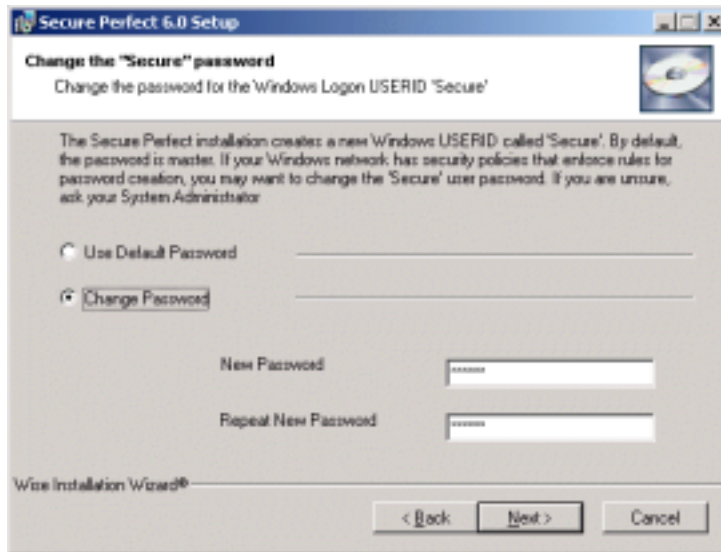
1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 4-6](#).



**Figure 4-6. Badge Alias Window**

2. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
  - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
  - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
  - **Use aliases manually provided by user aliasing** allows you to assign the number.
3. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7](#).



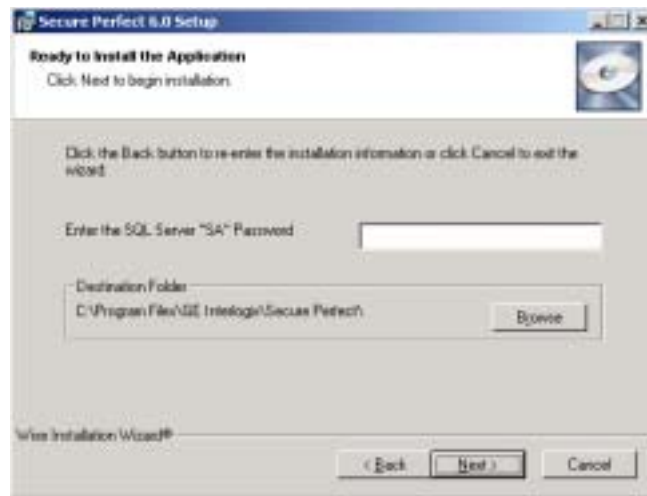
**Figure 4-7. Change the 'secure' Password Window**

4. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

5. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays as in [Figure 4-8](#).



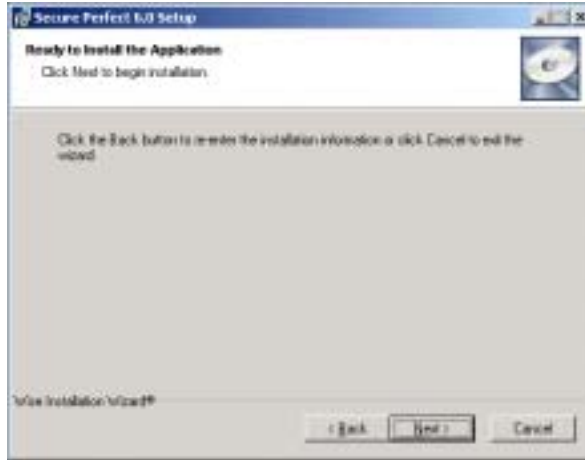
**Figure 4-8. Ready to Install the Application**

*Enter your previously assigned SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)*

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 2.9](#).)

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-9](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-9. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** A series of Access Control and Security Management windows display as Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

**Result:** The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays as in [Figure 4-10 on page 4.21](#).

► To select a Secure Perfect edition:

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 4-10](#).



**Figure 4-10. Select Secure Perfect Edition**

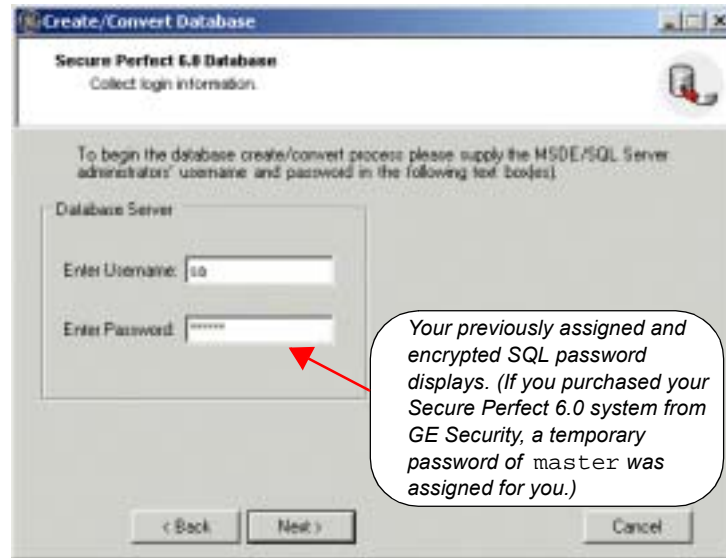
2. Click **Next**.

► To create a database:

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 4-11](#).

*Important!*

**NOTE:** We recommend that you DO NOT select **Cancel** in this window. However, if you must exit at this time and plan to create your database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 9.5](#) for instructions to complete a database creation outside of the installation sequence.



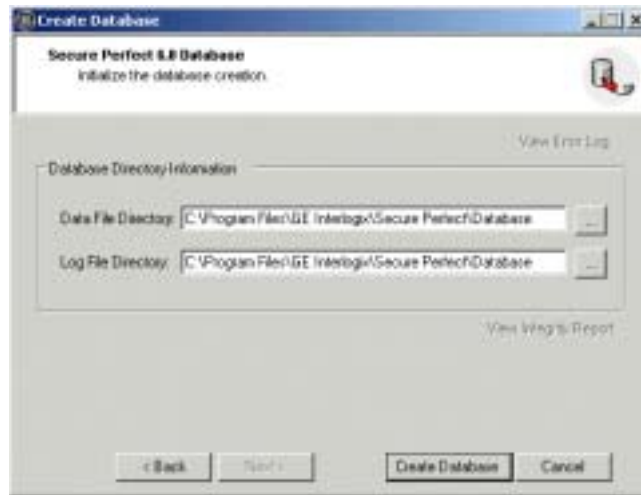
**Figure 4-11. Create/Convert Database Window**

*If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.*



2. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 2.9](#).)
3. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** The **Database Directory Information** window displays, as in [Figure 4-12 on page 4.23](#).





**Figure 4-12. Secure Perfect 6.0 Database Window**

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
  - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
  - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

**NOTE:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.
5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.

**NOTE FOR CONVERSIONS:** During a conversion, if a database already exists:

1. A warning message displays stating that this application is currently operating with an earlier version of Secure Perfect. Click **Yes**, you want to convert.
2. A second window displays your current Secure Perfect version. Click **Convert Database** to accept the required version and begin the database conversion.

6. When the database creation/conversion is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.
7. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

8. When the database creation/conversion is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

**NOTE:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called `SPCreateDB.txt` is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.

9. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The dialog box closes. You may receive a message informing you that Installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 is complete. If you get a message to restart the system, click **Yes** to restart your system at this time.

10. **DEPENDING** on the component configuration scenario you are installing:

- If the Secure Perfect Application is installed at this time:

An **SP License Setup** window displays. Unless otherwise stated in your configuration scenario, proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.64.](#)

- If File Server is NOT installed:

Click **Cancel**. It is not possible for you to license at this time. Operation of your Secure Perfect 6.0 system is possible at this time; however, the system will start and remain in Demo Mode until you properly license Secure Perfect. (Refer to [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 8.10](#) for a description of Demo Mode.)

- If Secure Perfect Application was not installed:

The **SP License Setup** window does not display. If not already removed, remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive. Proceed to the installation of the next component in your configuration option and continue with instructions.




#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	<i>You are here!</i>				

**NOTE:** Be sure to complete all instructions for the scenario you are installing.

## 2. Database Server and File Server Configuration

### Scenario 2: Database Server and File Server on One Computer Secure Perfect Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server	✓		
Secure Perfect Application		✓	
<b>NOTE:</b> This configuration has the Database Server and the File Server installed on Computer 1, then the Secure Perfect application is installed on Computer 2.			

➤ **If you selected Database Server and File Server on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 4-6 on page 4.17](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 4.18](#).
2. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 4.18](#).

Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password**

3. Enter your new password and then enter a second time.
4. Click **Next**.

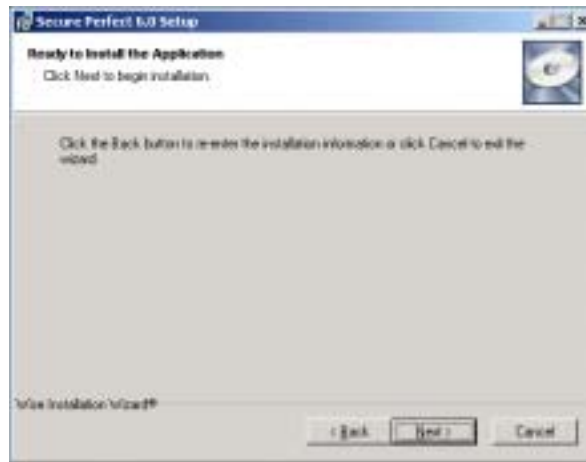
**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

5. Enter the SQL Server password for the ‘sa’ user.

6. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-13](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-13. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
9. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 4.21.](#)

[“To create a database:” on page 4.21 through page 4.25.](#)

*Important!*

10. Return to this step, remove the Secure Perfect installation CD, and continue with instructions to install **Secure Perfect Application**. Follow instructions for the operating system installed on second computer:

- [“If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:” on page 4.28](#)

OR

- [“If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:” on page 4.28](#)

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

Continue with instructions as listed in [“Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Client Computer” on page 7.4.](#)

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system, but DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)

4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer
- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select **SPSQL** instance of SQL Server.
- When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password **master**.
- Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.

6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
  - DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following

Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:” on page 4.30](#).

► **When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **License Agreement** window displays.

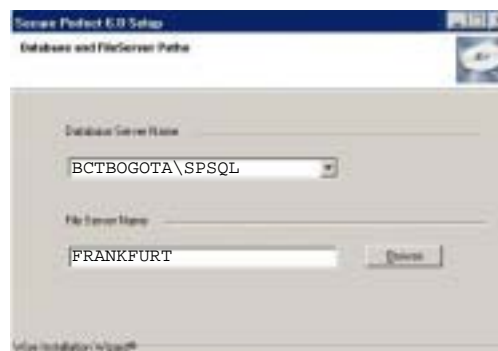
2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, as in Figure 4-14 on page 4.31, select the type of installation as **Custom**.





**Figure 4-14. Select Installation Type - Custom**

4. Click **Next**.
5. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Application**.
6. The **Database and File Server** window displays as in [Figure 4-15](#).



**Figure 4-15. Database and File Server Paths**

7. If the name displayed in **Database Server Name** is not appropriate, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the name displayed in **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
8. Click **Next**.

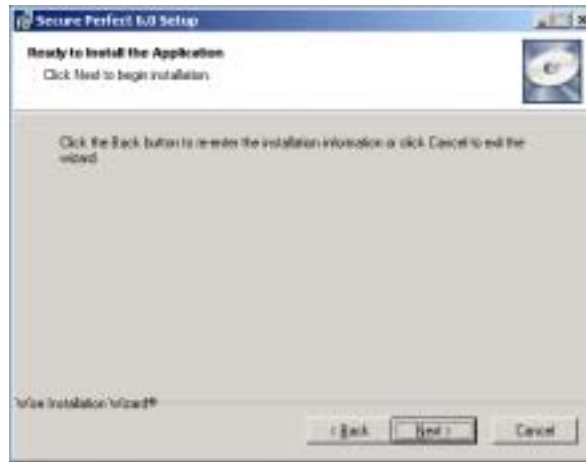
**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7 on page 4.18](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 4.18](#).) Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
9. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 4-22 on page 4.47](#). The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-16](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-16. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

10. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.




11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.
12. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.64.](#)

#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	<i>You are here!</i>				

### 3. Database Server and Secure Perfect Application Configuration

#### Scenario 3: Database Server and Secure Perfect Application on One Computer File Server on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server		✓	
Secure Perfect Application	✓		

**NOTE:** This configuration has the Database Server and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 1, while the File Server is installed on Computer 2.

➤ **If you selected Database Server and Secure Perfect Application on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. A window displays similar to [Figure 4-17](#).



**Figure 4-17. File Server Name Required**

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry. (If there are more than one Server with SPSQL, the Database Server Name field is enabled. Select the appropriate Server name.)
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to another computer that will serve as **File Server** for your system, and then select that computer to display the computer name in this dialog box.

**NOTE:** You must install **File Server** on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option**, as in [Figure 4-6](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 4.18](#).
5. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays, as in [Figure 4-7](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 4.18](#). Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

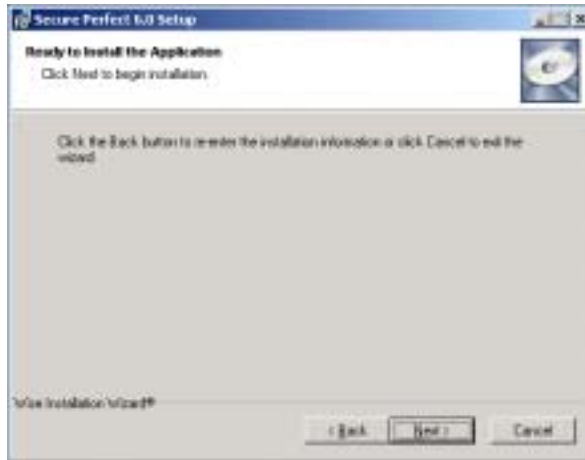
6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays as in [Figure 4-11](#).

7. Enter the SQL Server password for the ‘sa’ user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 2.9](#).)
8. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-18](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-18. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

9. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

**Result:** The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

11. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections of this chapter:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 4.21.](#)

[“To create a database:” on page 4.21 through page 4.25.](#)

However, YOU CANNOT LICENSE AT THIS TIME. Click **Cancel** to exit **License Setup**.

**NOTE:** Return to this step and continue with the setup instructions.

12. Click **Yes** to reboot your system at this time. After the reboot, log in as administrator.
13. Continue with configuration of the File Server on a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer.

➤ **Now, you must select and install ONLY the File Server component on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server and Secure Perfect Application installation already complete.

If you do not install the File Server at this time, you will not be able to license your system.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack

- Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC
    - Windows 2000 Service Pack
    - Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 4.39.](#)



► **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

4. Select **ONLY File Server**. Click **Next**.
5. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7 on page 4.18](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 4.18](#).) Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated as in [Figure 4-22 on page 4.47](#). You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
9. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

*Important!*




10. Proceed to license your system at this time. Refer to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 4.64.

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## 4. Database Server Configuration

### Scenario 4: Database Server on One Computer File Server and Secure Perfect Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server		✓	
Secure Perfect Application		✓	

**NOTE:** This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, then the File Server and the Secure Perfect application are installed on Computer 2.

► **If you selected ONLY Database Server component on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. A window displays similar to [Figure 4-17 on Page 4.34](#).
2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Enter the computer name or click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer for your system, and then select the computer to display the name in this field.

**NOTE:** You must install the **File Server** component on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

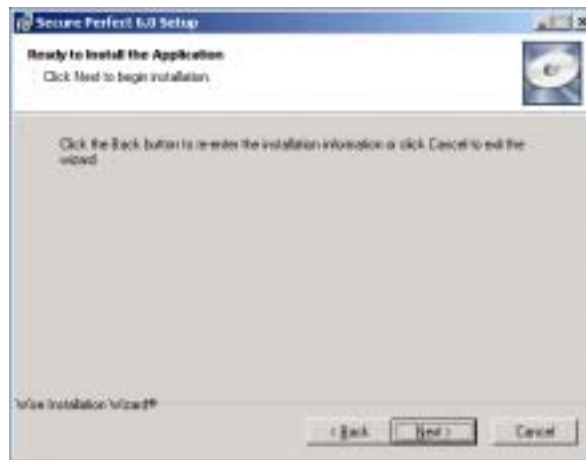
4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option** as in [Figure 4-6](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 4.18](#). Choose one badge aliasing option and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 4.18](#). Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
5. Click **Next**.
- Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 4-11 on page 4.22](#).
6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user.
  7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-19](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-19. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

8. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** SP 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.

10. Remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.

11. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 4.21.](#)

[“To create a database:” on page 4.21 through page 4.25.](#)

- **Now, you must install File Server and Secure Perfect Application on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation already complete.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework

- DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer

#### **Installing Non-English Operating Systems:**

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified,

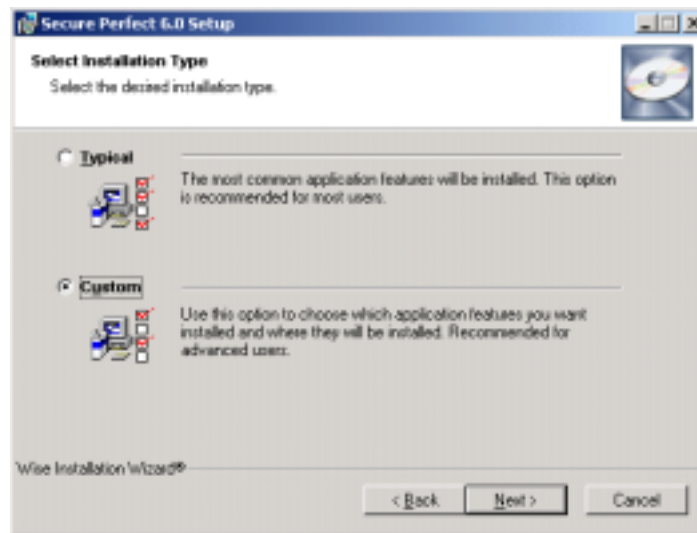
Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins. The Welcome window displays.

9. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#) on page 4.45.

► **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, as in Figure 4-20, select the type of installation as **Custom**.



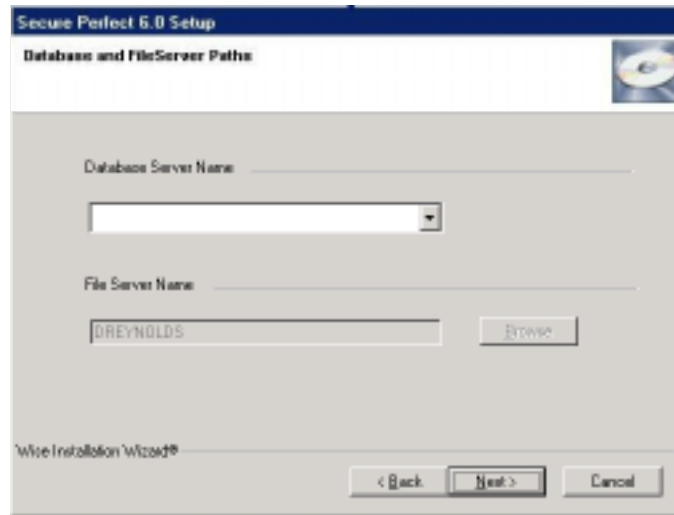
**Figure 4-20. Selection Installation Type - Custom**

4. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

5. Select **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Application**. Click **Next**.

**Result:** A window displays similar to [Figure 4-21](#):



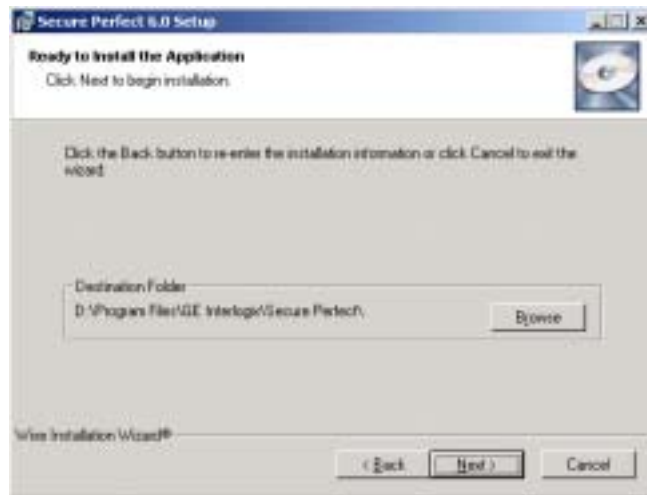
**Figure 4-21. Database Server Name Required**

6. The **Database Server Name** field is available and required. Select a Server Name from the drop-down list of eligible SQL servers for this installation.
7. The **File Server Name** is a read-only field and is unavailable for selection.
8. Click **Next** to display the **Change the 'secure' Password** window, as in [Figure 4-7 on page 4.18](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 4.18](#).) Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)



9. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 4-22](#).

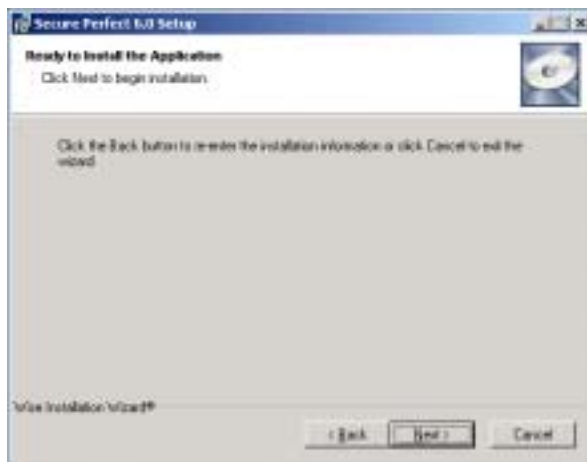


**Figure 4-22. Custom Install - Destination Folder Path**

**Result:** The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-23](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-23. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

10. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

**Result:** The **SP License Setup** window displays.




12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive and continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.64](#).

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## 5. Each Component on a Separate Computer

### Scenario 5: Each Component on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server		✓	
Secure Perfect Application			✓

**NOTE:** This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, the File Server installed on Computer 2, and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 3.

- To install each Secure Perfect component to a separate computer, you must begin with the Database Server installation on the first computer.

1. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Database Server**:

**Result:** A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 4-17 on page 4.34](#).

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer you will be using for your system, and then select the computer name to display the computer name in this dialog box.

**NOTE:** You must install File Server on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option**, as in [Figure 4-6](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 4.18](#). Choose one badge aliasing option and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 4.18](#). Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

5. Click **Next**.

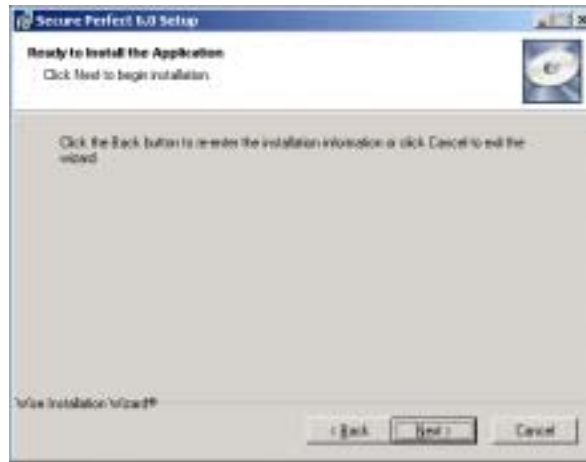
*Enter your sa password as created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 2.9](#).*

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 4-11 on page 4.22](#). Enter the SQL Server password for the ‘sa’ user.

6. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect Database Server files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 4-24](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 4-24. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
9. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 4.21.](#)

[“To create a database:” on page 4.21 through page 4.25.](#)

- **Now, you must install the File Server to a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.

3. You **MUST** log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
  - DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC
    - Windows 2000 Service Pack
    - Windows Installer

#### **Installing Non-English Operating Systems:**

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime

- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

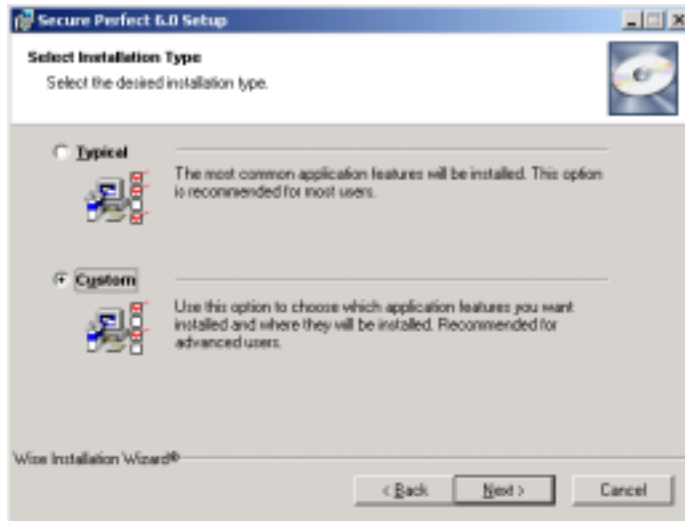
7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 4.53](#).

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Select Installation Type** window displays as in [Figure 4-25 on Page 4.54](#).



**Figure 4-25. Select Installation Type - Custom**

3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**. Click **Next**.
4. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY File Server**.
5. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7 on page 4.18](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 4.18](#).) Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated as in [Figure 4-22 on page 4.47](#). You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.



7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
9. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
10. Now, install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Application on a third computer.

➤ **If the third computer is Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

Follow the steps as listed in [“Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Client Computer”](#) on page 7.4.

➤ **If you choose to install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a third and separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
  - DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer

#### **Installing Non-English Operating Systems:**

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the **Welcome** window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#) on page 4.57.

► **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, as in Figure 4-26, select the type of installation as **Custom**.



**Figure 4-26. Select Installation Type - Custom**

4. Click **Next**.
5. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Application**, and click **Next**.
6. The following window displays:



**Figure 4-27. Database and File Server Paths**

7. If the name displayed in **Database Server Name** is not correct, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the name displayed in **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
8. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 4-7 on page 4.18](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 4.18](#).) Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 4-22 on page 4.47](#). The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
13. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.64](#).

#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## When Enterprise Custom Configurations are Complete:

**NOTE:** Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 4.64, if you have not already licensed.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Edition

Recommended for experienced software installers.

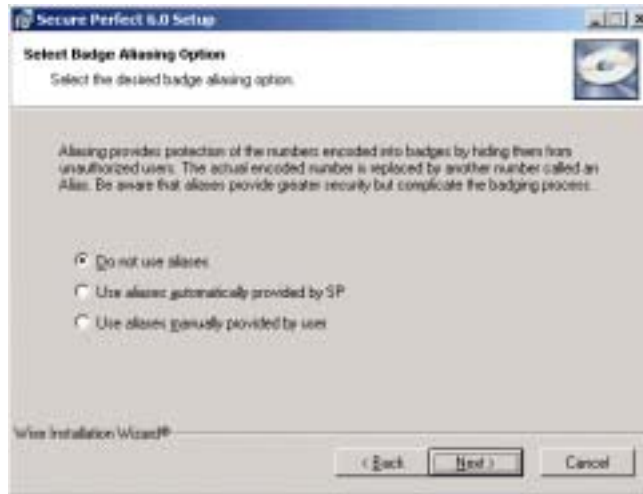
Secure Perfect 6.0 components CANNOT be individually installed on a Windows Professional operating system. However, you MUST select **Custom** as your installation type if you choose one of the following options:

- Badge Aliasing
- Change the 'secure' Password

### Instructions Specific to Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional

➤ If you chose a Custom installation, follow the instructions below:

1. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.
2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Server** and click **Next**.
3. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 4-28 on page 4.62](#).



**Figure 4-28. Badge Alias Window**

4. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
  - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
  - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
  - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
5. Choose one aliasing option and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 4-7](#). See explanation in [Step "4." on page 4.18](#).
6. Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
7. Click **Next**.



8. At the **Ready to Install the Application** window, the default program folder is indicated, as in [Figure 4-22 on page 4.47](#). You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files. Click **Next** to continue.  
  
**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.
  9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
  10. At this point, the Secure Perfect installation determines if `SPSQL` instance of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a needs to be installed.
- **Installing MSDE and Service Pack 3a when the required software is not detected on your system:**
1. When the required software is not detected on your system, installation of MSDE and Service Pack 3a continues.
  2. When installation of MSDE is complete, the system **automatically** reboots. This takes several minutes.
  3. After the reboot, the database is created. A progress bar displays the process.
- NOTE:** No user interaction is required. Please wait.
- **What's next:**
1. When the database creation is complete, the **SP License Setup** window displays along with a **Welcome** dialog box. We recommend that you license your system at this time. Click **OK** in the dialog box to continue.
  2. Continue with "[Licensing Your Secure Perfect System](#)" on page 4.64.

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

## Licensing Your Secure Perfect System

GE Security recommends that you license your system at this time. The reminder to license is placed at this point to maintain the proper sequence in completing your installation.

➤ **To license your Secure Perfect system:**

Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1](#). After obtaining your registered license key as instructed in [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1](#), follow one of the sequences listed:

- [“First Time License” on page 8.6](#)
- [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 8.8](#)
- [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 8.9](#)
- [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 8.10](#)

*Important!*

**REMINDER:** When you have completed a successful licensing sequence, return to this point and continue.

➤ **After a successful licensing sequence, or if you click Cancel to license at another time:**

1. You may receive an **SP 6.0 Installation Complete** dialog box. If so, click **Yes** to reboot your computer.
2. Log in as administrator and continue with [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 4.65](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
		You are here!			

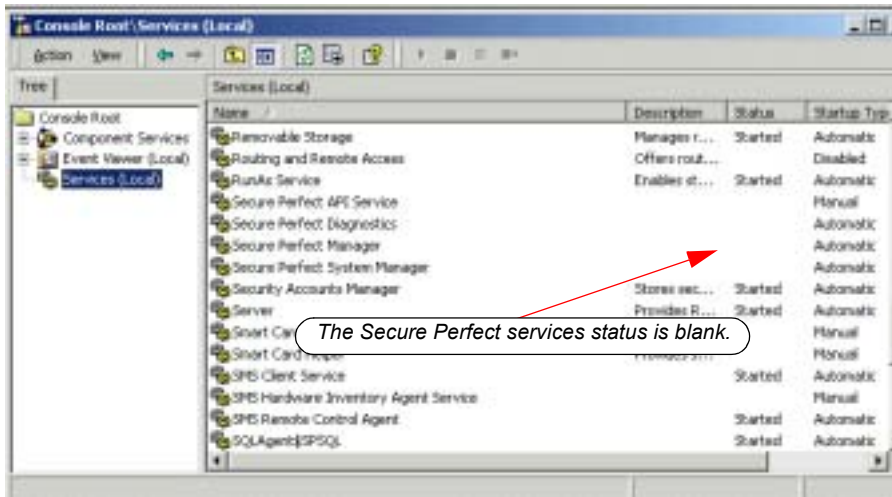
## Setting Services to Automatic Startup

**NOTE:** At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.

Now, you need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics, Secure Perfect Manager, and Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.0 services start. Refer to “[Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview](#)” on page 9.2, for additional information about Secure Perfect Services.

**ONLY Enterprise Installation:** No services are installed at this point if this is a custom installation and *Secure Perfect Application* is not yet installed.

- **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**
1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.  
  
**Result:** The **Services** window displays. Expand the list of services and scroll down.
  2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.



**Figure 4-29. Secure Perfect Component Services**

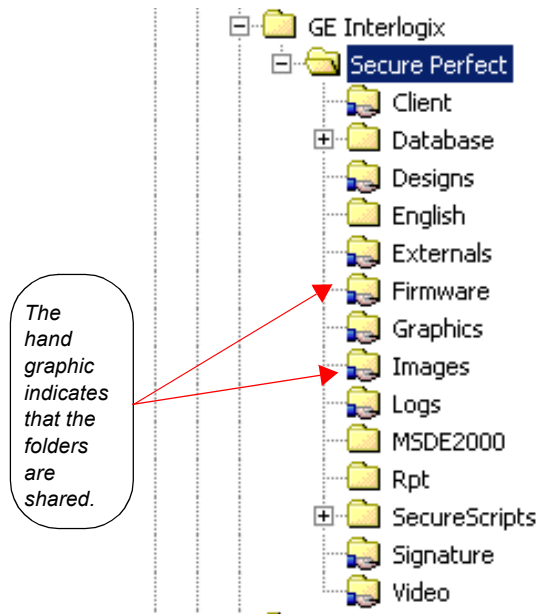
3. The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.
  4. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
  5. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
  6. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
- **To start the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service** is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of an Application Program Interface (API) to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.0 and have been previously licensed.
- **When all services are configured:**
1. Close all windows and applications.

2. Restart the Secure Perfect Server computer.
- **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
    - Secure Perfect Diagnostic
    - Secure Perfect System Manager
    - Secure Perfect Manager
  2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
  3. Exit the window.
  4. Continue with [“Server Folder Structure” on page 4.67](#).

## Server Folder Structure

1. During installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software, the following folders are created: Client, Database, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Logs, MSDE2000 (if yours is a Windows Professional system), Rpt, SecureScripts, and Signature.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the Program Files/GE Interlogix/Secure Perfect folder, or to the folder where your Secure Perfect application installed. The folders displayed here vary with the type of installation:
  - If **Typical Server Type** is selected, all folders are present.
  - If **Custom Server Type** is installed:
    - If only **Database Server** feature is installed, Database, Logs, and SecureScripts folders are present.
    - If only **File Server** feature is installed, Client, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Rpt, and Signature folders are present.

- If only **Secure Perfect Application** is installed, Client, English, Logs, and Rpt folders are present.
  - The MSDE2000 folder will display only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Server.
3. Some of the folders are shared. (Refer to the example in [Figure 4-30 on page 4.68.](#)) This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, when logged in as an authorized user.



**Figure 4-30. Typical Server Folder Structure**

## Server Folders

- **To learn more about the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, review these descriptions:**

### Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions.

**Database**

A shared folder that contains the system database file along with the archive and history database files. SQL Server log files for each database are also found in this folder.

**Designs**

A shared folder that contains all badge designs used by the imaging stations and sample badge designs.

**English**

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.0 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

**Externals**

An empty folder created to store reports created by third party report generator.

**Firmware**

A shared folder that contains the firmware or application code needed to flash the micros.

**Graphics**

A shared folder that contains maps and icons used for Alarm Graphics.

**Images**

A shared folder that contains graphics files of captured, badge holder pictures. Sample images are included if you installed the sample database.

**MSDE2000**

**This folder displays ONLY following Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Server Typical installation.** The user may use these files if re-installation of MSDE is required. These files (Microsoft SQL Desktop Engine (MSDE) with Service Pack 3a) are used by the system during installation of Secure Perfect 6.0.

**Logs**

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.0 diagnostic log files.

**Rpt**

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

**SecureScripts**

The scripts and programs used to create the database in SQL Server. It also contains subfolders required for converting and upgrading Secure Perfect systems to Secure Perfect 6.0.

**Signature**

A shared folder that contains the graphic files of captured signatures.

When you have completed your review of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, continue with [“Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts” on page 4.70](#).

## Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts

*Default local group is SPAdmin. Default local user name is secure and the password is master.*

1. During the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer installation, a default Secure Perfect 6.0 local user account was set up for you. If you choose to add users and assign or change user passwords, refer to [“Defining User Accounts” on page 3.7](#).
2. Refer to documentation you received when you purchased your Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or Windows XP operating system, for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.
3. Continue with [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 4.71](#).



## Adding Additional Clients to the Database

### Pinging Additional Client Computers

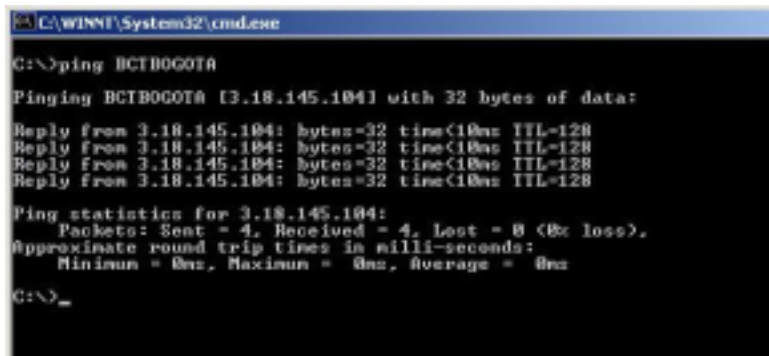
In order to add an additional client computer in the database, you must verify that the computer can be reached by name.

➤ **To communicate with the client computer:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

**Result:** A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <name>` where `name` is the name of the client computer. Press **Enter**.



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping BCTB0GOT0

Pinging BCTB0GOT0 [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128

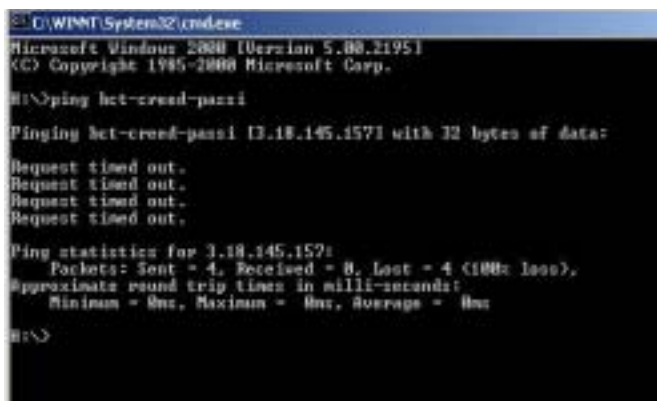
Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\>_
  
```

**Figure 4-31. Successful Ping to Client Computer**

**Result:** A successful ping reveals the client computer address was reached. Your screen will display similar to [Figure 4-31](#). Proceed to add the clients to the database. Refer to [“Adding Clients to the Database” on page 4.72](#).

OR



```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe
Microsoft Windows [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping hot-creek-pass1

Pinging hot-creek-pass1 [13.18.145.1571] with 32 bytes of data:

Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 13.18.145.1571:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milliseconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms
H:\>
```

**Figure 4-32. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer**

**Result:** If the client computer could not be reached, your screen will display similar to [Figure 4-32](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup (“[Preparing the Operating System](#)” on page 2.4 for an Windows 2000 Standard Server or “[Preparing the Operating System](#)” on page 3.4 for a Professional Server) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved. Contact your network administrator.

4. Continue with “[Adding Clients to the Database](#)”.

## Adding Clients to the Database

You need to add all client computers to your Secure Perfect database that will be in your Secure Perfect system. To do this, log in and start the Secure Perfect 6.0 application.

➤ **To add clients to the Secure Perfect 6.0 database:**

1. When you have installed and licensed the Secure Perfect application for the first time (this is the First Time License computer), start the Secure Perfect 6.0 application by double-clicking the Secure Perfect desktop icon.

- **Typical Installation:** The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
- **Custom Installation:** The components required to license may be stored on two separate computers:
  - The File Server stores the LicenseInfo file.
  - The First Time License computer stores the Component Services files.

You must be able to communicate with the computer(s) that store both source files.

2. From the **File** menu, select **Login**.

#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
			You are here!		

3. Log in as `secure` with a password of `master`.
4. If client computers have Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional installed and if they are on the network, you can access the Client Form in the Secure Perfect application, and proceed with adding clients to the database.


#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
				You are here!	


➤ **To access the Client Form:**

1. Select **Client** from the **Administration** menu.

**Result:** A new client form is displayed.

2. Click **Add**  from the Secure Perfect main menu.
3. Enter data describing your new client. Refer to Online Help for details of each individual field.

**NOTE:** If a client computer is currently offline or connected to the network by a gateway or hub, you may not see that computer. You may need to correct network issues with the client computer before proceeding. You may also see computers that cannot be clients if they do not use TCP/IP protocols.

4. Click **Save** .
5. Repeat [Step “2.” on page 4.74](#), through [Step “4.” on page 4.74](#), for all clients.
6. You can add as many clients as you want. However, only the licensed maximum number can connect to the server at the same time. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12](#).

## What's Next?

If you have not already removed the CD from your CD-ROM drive, do so now. You have completed the Server computer setup. Proceed with one or more of the following:

- If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1.](#)
- Proceed to set up the additional client computers on your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients” on page 7.1.](#)
- Proceed to configure your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 9.1.](#)

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
					<i>You are here!</i>

**NOTES**

## Chapter 5: Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment

This chapter is for experienced software installers and includes instructions for Secure Perfect configuration in a Windows Cluster environment. This feature is available for only Enterprise-level installations. Clustering improves overall system availability and reduces down time. If any one Server stops functioning, a process called failover automatically shifts its workload to another Server to provide continuous service. Some forms of clustering employ load balancing, which enables the computer workload to be distributed across a network of linked computers.



In this chapter:

[“Prepare to Install” on page 5.2](#)

[“Installation in a Cluster Environment” on page 5.6](#)

[“Installing SPNodeInstall on an Additional Node” on page 5.21](#)

[“Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources” on page 5.23](#)

[“Upgrading a Clustered Environment” on page 5.26](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 5.26](#)

## Prepare to Install

### Pre-Installation Checklist

- To prepare your Server computers for Secure Perfect 6.0 Clustering, review the following:
  - ☐ Your Clustered Secure Perfect 6.0 system WILL NOT install unless minimum requirements have been met. Before you begin installing Secure Perfect 6.0, contact one of the following:
    - Enterprise Services Department of GE Security at (561) 998-6168, to discuss Windows Clustering requirements, setup, and installation.
    - GE Security Sales or Customer Support, at (561) 998-6100, can provide additional details of these services and a quotation applicable to your system configuration.
  - ☐ Install the Cluster software on the appropriate computers. Clustering can be installed on Windows 2000 Advanced Servers or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Servers.
  - ☐ Refer to documentation received with your hardware.
    - Review the Cluster software installation and configuration with your IT Department.

*Important!*

- We recommend that your IT Department configure your Cluster Failback Policy to **Allow Failback** and set the time interval as **Immediately**. This configuration allows a seamless installation to continue on the primary node. (Later, this configuration can be adjusted to suit your preferred configuration.)
- The Microsoft Windows Web site provides an excellent source of information and documentation about clustering.

- ☐ Each Server computer must be part of a new or existing domain. If you are creating a new domain, always consult with the network administrator before adding a domain or adding any computers to an existing network. Refer to [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain” on page 5.3.](#)



- ☐ When installing to a Windows Cluster, your SQL Cluster instance SPSQL must be a Service Pack 3a level. If SPQSL is not up to date, the installation will update the instance to Service Pack level 3a.
- ☐ If your domain network is prepared, continue with [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 5.4.](#)

## Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

Since the Server computer will be part of a new or existing domain, you must add the Server computers to the network.

1. Since network configuration varies from company-to-company, see your IT administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** If your Server and client computers participate in a workgroup, add the workgroup name during the installation. We suggest using SECUREPERFECT. Write down the server name and workgroup name as these are required during the client installation.

2. It is important that the Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on page 3.6](#) for more information or consult with your network administrator.

➤ **To change from the LocalSystem Windows Service Account to an existing domain account:**

In Windows services, the SQLServerAgent must use a domain account. The SQLAgent account is the security context under which the Snapshot Agent, Merge Agent, and Distribution Agent are running by default.

1. Navigate to the **Component Services** of your computer and double-click to display the list of services.
2. From the list of Services (Local), select **MSSQL\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. From the shortcut menu, select **Properties**.

**Result:** The **General** tab of the **Properties** window displays.

4. Click **Stop** under **Service status**.

5. Select and display the **Log On** tab.
6. Select **This account**.  
**Result:** The field for account name is now enabled.
7. Enter the name of the domain account that will start and stop SQL services (or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select the name of the domain account).
8. Enter the password for the domain account and then enter the password again to confirm.
9. Return to the **General** tab and verify that **Startup type** is set to **Automatic**.
10. Click **Start** under **Service status**.
11. Click **OK** to accept and close the window.
12. From the list of Local Services, select **SQLAgent\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
13. Repeat [Step “3.” on page 5.3](#) through [Step “11.” on page 5.4](#).
14. Continue with [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0”](#).

## Installing Secure Perfect 6.0

➤ **To install the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

1. Enable the Cluster service on your computer by accessing the properties of your network in the **Cluster Configuration** folder.
2. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as administrator to the local computer.
3. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

4. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

5. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

*Important!*

**NOTE:** If your Cluster Failback Policy is configured to **Allow Failback** and the time interval is set as **Immediately**, each reboot will result in an immediate failover and an immediate failback. This configuration allows a seamless installation to continue on the primary node. Later, this configuration can be adjusted to suit your preferred configuration. (If the Failback Policy is NOT configured for immediate failback and your cluster has failed over to a secondary node, you must perform a manual failback.)

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime

- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

6. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
7. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the **Welcome** window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 5.6.](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

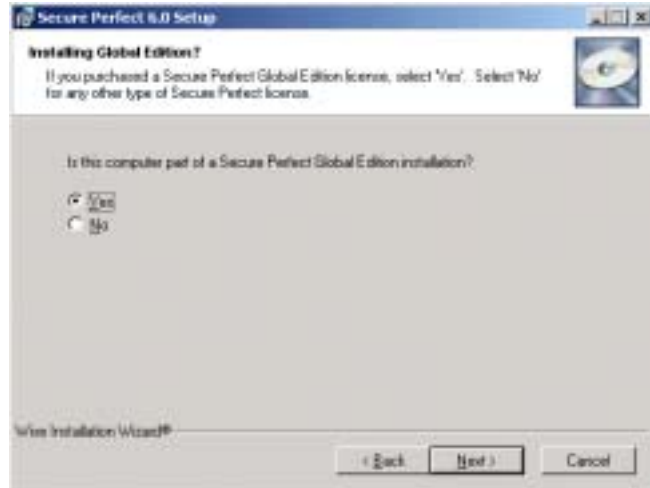
1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept** and click **Next**.

## Installation in a Cluster Environment

➤ **To begin your Custom type of installation:**

1. Select **Custom** as the **Installation Type** and click **Next**.

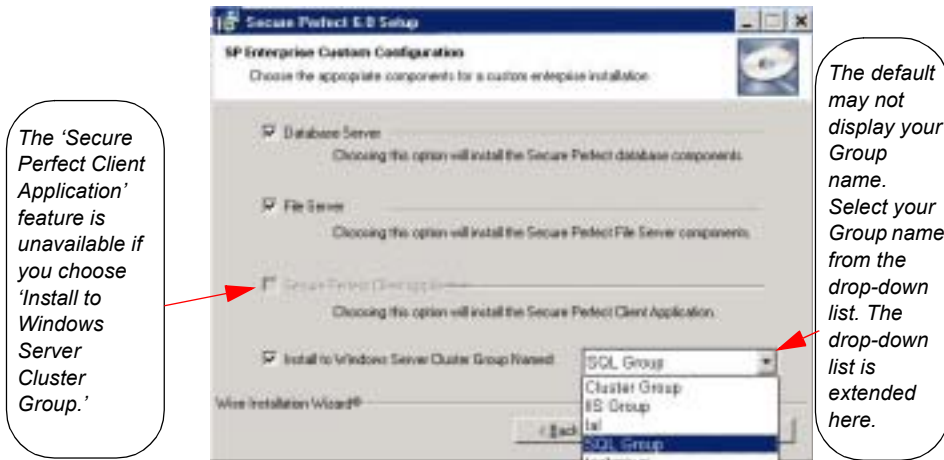
**Result:** The **Installing Global Edition?** window displays, as in [Figure 5-1 on page 5.7.](#)



**Figure 5-1. Installing Global Edition? Window**

2. Select **Yes** or **No** and then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Custom Configuration** window displays for you to choose which Secure Perfect features to configure on this computer. The **Custom Configuration** window displays similar to [Figure 5-2 on page 5.8](#).



**Figure 5-2. Enterprise Server - Custom Cluster Configuration**

3. By default, the **Database Server**, **File Server**, and **Install to Windows Server Cluster Group** are enabled and selected on the components list of this window as displayed in [Figure 5-2 on page 5.8](#). Review the selections and clear those options that you are not installing at this time.

**NOTE:** Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed before you begin.

**Database Server:** Only Microsoft SQL components install. This option is a prerequisite in order to install **File Server**.

**File Server:** Only Secure Perfect File Server components install. This Server stores the data files shared by clients on the Secure Perfect network. All file shares install.

**Secure Perfect Client Application:** This selection is unavailable at the Cluster Server computers, if you choose **Install to Windows Server Cluster Group**. You must install the client application on a separate computer.

**Install to Windows Server Cluster Group:** If this option is selected, the **Secure Perfect Client Application** option is unavailable. You must enter the name of the Cluster group or select from the drop-down list of available Cluster groups where Secure Perfect can create Secure Perfect Cluster file share resources. This is also the same Cluster group where the **SPSQL** SQL Cluster instance is located, if the Secure Perfect Database Server computer is being installed.

4. Click **Next**.

## Cluster Configuration Options

The configuration options described in the following sections are the result of selections made on the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window. Refer to [Figure 5-2 on page 5.8](#).

**Table 5-1: Custom Configuration Options**

**NOTE:** Windows that display during installation are similar to the sample configurations presented.

Scenario	Begin on Page:
1.	<a href="#">“Database Server, File Server, and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group” on page 5.11</a>
2.	<a href="#">“Database Server Configuration and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group” on page 5.18</a>
3.	<a href="#">“File Server Configuration and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group” on page 5.20</a>
4.	<a href="#">“Secure Perfect Client Application Installation” on page 5.21</a>

**IMPORTANT:** When you select a scenario, be sure to complete all instructions for that scenario.



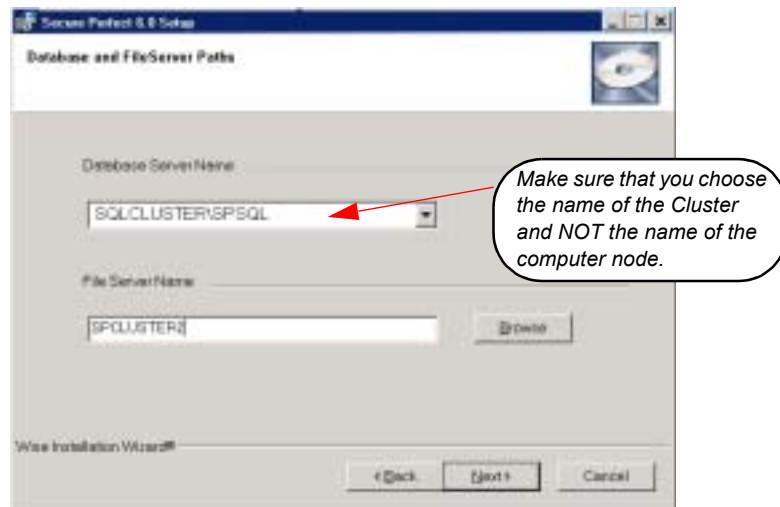
## 1. Database Server, File Server, and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group

➤ If you accept the default selections on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:

1. Enter the **Cluster Group Name**. The **Cluster Group Name** is the resource group for the cluster drive to which you are installing. Click **Next**.

**NOTE:** Later, after the install, you must go to **Start/Settings/Control Panel/Administrative Tools/Cluster Administrator** and add the Cluster drive as a dependency to all the file shares that are created in this group. Refer to [“Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources” on page 5.23](#).

**Result:** The **Database and File Server Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 5-3](#).



**Figure 5-3. Database and File Server Paths Window**

2. Enter the **Database Server Name** or select from the drop-down list. This is the combination of instance of SQL Server running on the cluster and the name of the Cluster. Typically, these are different names.

3. You can accept the default **File Server Name** as displayed, enter the Cluster name, or click **Browse** to navigate to the File Server.
4. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 5-4 on page 5.12](#).



**Figure 5-4. Select Badge Aliasing Option Window**

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
  - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
  - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
  - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

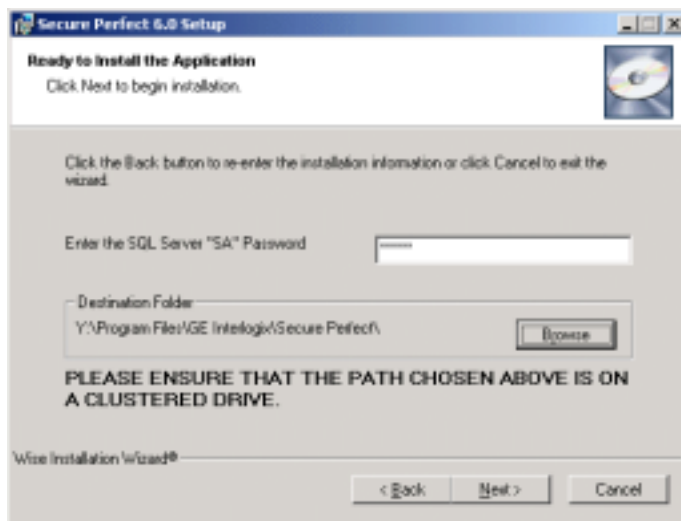
**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 5-5 on page 5.13](#).



**Figure 5-5. Change the 'Secure' Password Window**

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
8. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays as in [Figure 5-6 on page 5.14](#).



**Figure 5-6. Cluster - Ready to Install the Application Window**

9. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL.)
10. The default Destination Folder is displayed. You **MUST** change this to a location on the Cluster drive. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files. A message displays as a reminder, **PLEASE ENSURE THAT THE PATH CHOSEN ABOVE IS ON A CLUSTERED DRIVE**. (The Destination Folder and path statement does not display when upgrading from a previous version of Secure Perfect.)

**NOTE:** Review your destination folder.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

13. Continue with the sequence of steps in [“To select a Secure Perfect edition:”](#).

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 5-7](#).



**Figure 5-7. Select Secure Perfect Edition**

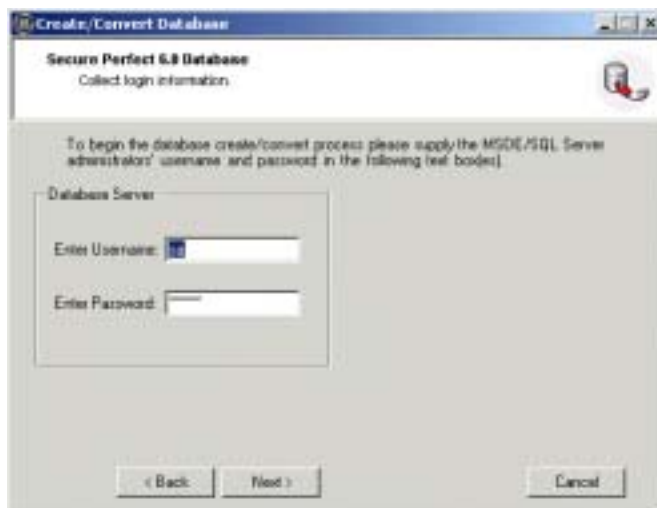
2. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Create\Convert Database** window displays.

## Creating the Database

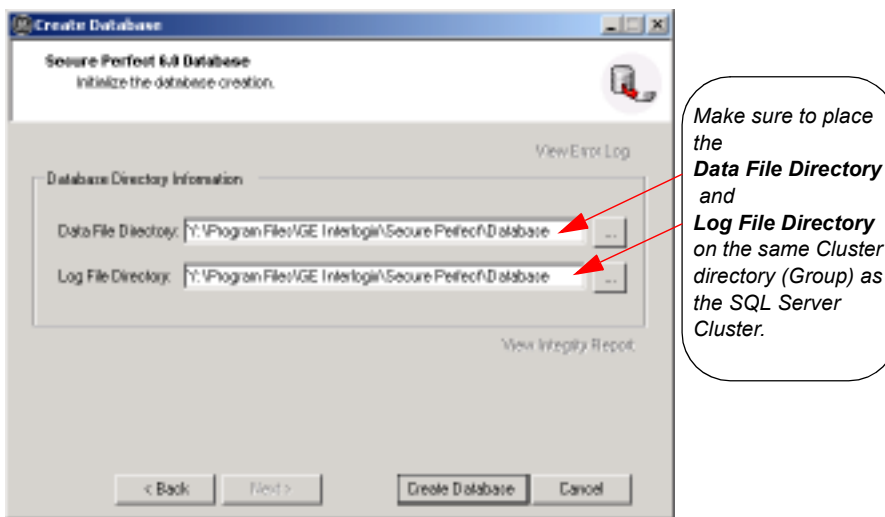
➤ **To create a database for your Secure Perfect system:**

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-8 on page 5.16](#).




**Figure 5-8. Create/Convert Database**

2. The **Password** field displays your encrypted and previously assigned password. Accept the encrypted password or re-enter.




**Figure 5-9. Create Database Window**

3. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

**NOTE:** If you are installing on the Global Database Server, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

**NOTE:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.

4. Click **Create/Convert Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

5. Following the database creation, a message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully created**.

**Result:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called `SPCreateDB.txt` if found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.

6. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The dialog box closes. Installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 is complete.

7. When prompted to reboot, click **Yes** to reboot your system.

8. Proceed to [“Installing SPNodeInstall on an Additional Node” on page 5.21](#)

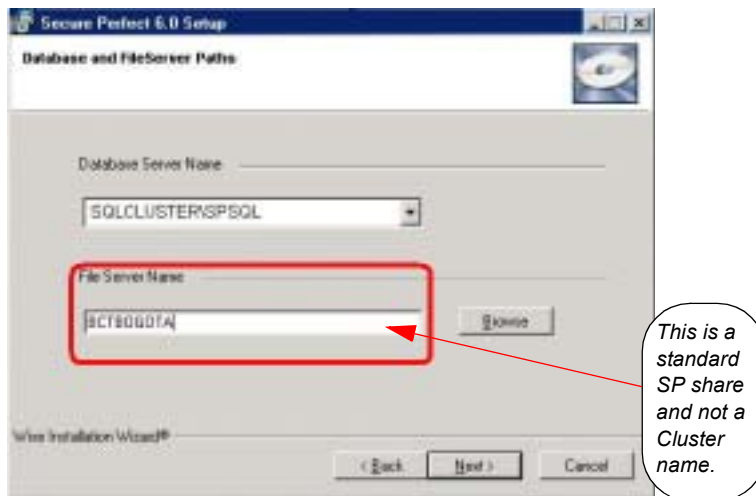
OR

If you have already installed an additional node, proceed to  
“Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources” on page 5.23.

## 2. Database Server Configuration and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group

► If you selected **ONLY Database Server** on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:

1. A **Database and File Server Paths** window displays similar to Figure 5-10.



**Figure 5-10. Cluster Installation - Database**

2. Enter the **Database Server Name** or select from the drop-down list. This is the combination of instance of SQL Server running on the cluster and the name of the Cluster. Typically, these are different names.
3. Click **Browse** to navigate and select a File Server location for your system.



4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option**, as in [Figure 5-4 on page 5.12](#). See explanation in [Step “5.” on page 5.12](#). Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 5-5](#). See explanation in [Step “7.” on page 5.13](#). Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 5-6 on page 5.14](#). Enter the SQL Server password for the ‘sa’ user.

6. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You must change this to a location on the Cluster drive. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files. A reminder message displays, PLEASE ENSURE THAT THE PATH CHOSEN ABOVE IS ON A CLUSTERED DRIVE. (The Destination Folder and path statement does not display when upgrading from a previous version of Secure Perfect.)

**NOTE:** Review your destination folder.

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

9. The system now creates a database. Refer to [“Creating the Database” on page 5.15](#) and follow the detailed instructions.

### 3. **File Server Configuration and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation already complete.

➤ **If you selected ONLY File Server on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 5-5](#). See explanation in [Step “7.” on page 5.13](#). Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
2. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated as in [Figure 5-6 on page 5.14](#). You **MUST** change this to a location on the Cluster drive. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files. A reminder message displays, **PLEASE ENSURE THAT THE PATH CHOSEN ABOVE IS ON A CLUSTERED DRIVE**. (The Destination Folder and path statement does not display when upgrading from a previous version of Secure Perfect.)

**NOTE:** Review your destination folder.

3. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

4. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.
5. Proceed to [“Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources” on page 5.23](#).

## 4. Secure Perfect Client Application Installation

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server, File Server, and Install to Windows Server Cluster Group installations already complete.

➤ **To install ONLY the Secure Perfect client application on a different and separate computer:**

1. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients” on page 7.1](#)
2. The following exceptions apply to a Clustering environment:
  - You must be part of an existing domain.
  - You must select installation type as **Custom**. Follow the sequence of instructions for installing a Custom client installation, as in [“CUSTOM Installation” on page 7.10](#) through [“What’s Next?” on page 7.25](#).

**NOTE:** The first Secure Perfect client computer installation is the First Time License client computer on your Secure Perfect system.

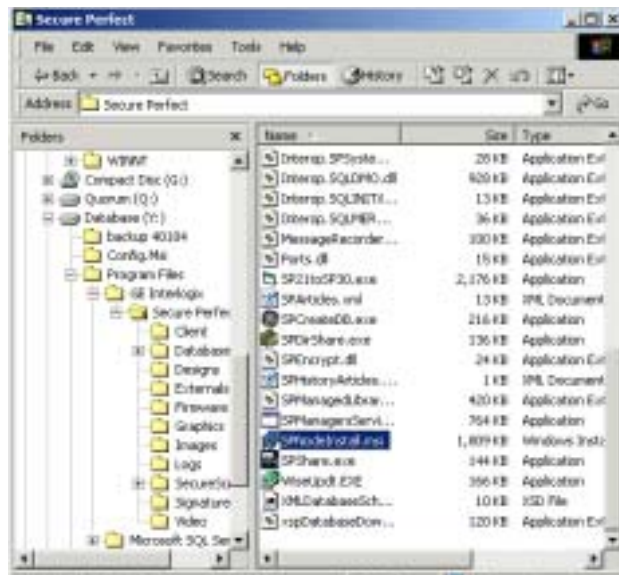
## Installing *SPNodeInstall* on an Additional Node

For all other nodes in the Cluster, an ‘**SPNodeInstall**’ installation is required to complete the Secure Perfect installation on the Cluster.

➤ **To install to a second node:**

1. Log in as administrator user.

2. Perform a failover at this time. The Cluster group that contains the SQL Server and file shares must be failed over to the secondary node before the 'SPNodeInstall' installation.
3. Locate and double-click the SPNodeInstall.msi file located in the cluster path name that was used in the initial Secure Perfect Cluster installation, such as Y:\Secure Perfect\ as displayed in [Figure 5-11](#).



**Figure 5-11. Example: SPNodeInstall.msi File Location**

4. When the **Welcome** window displays, click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 5-5 on page 5.13](#).

5. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your IT administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays as in [Figure 5-6 on page 5.14](#).

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

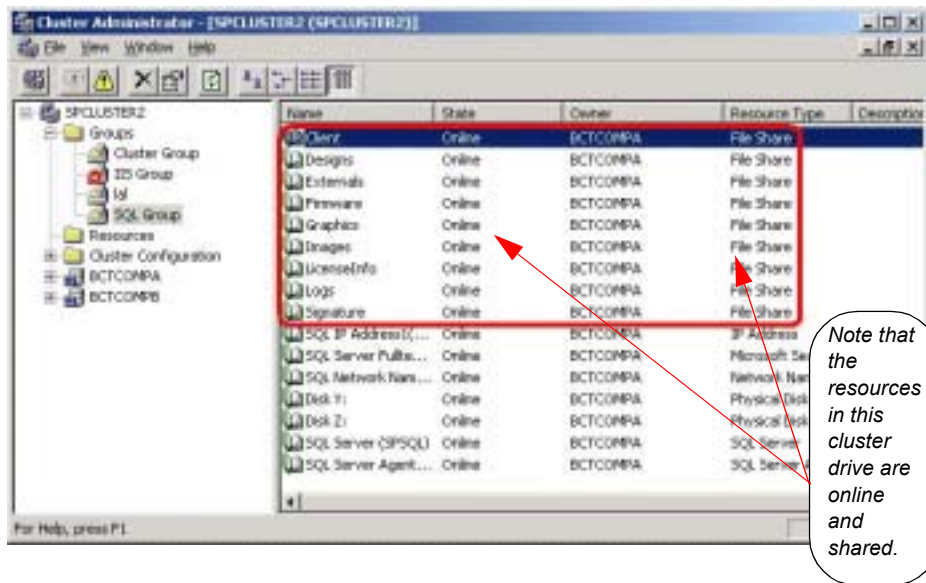
9. Proceed to [“Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources” on page 5.23](#).

## Configuring Secure Perfect File Share Resources

When the installation is complete, add a dependency to file shares of the Cluster drive and then bring these resources online. Refer to [Figure 5-12 on page 5.24](#).

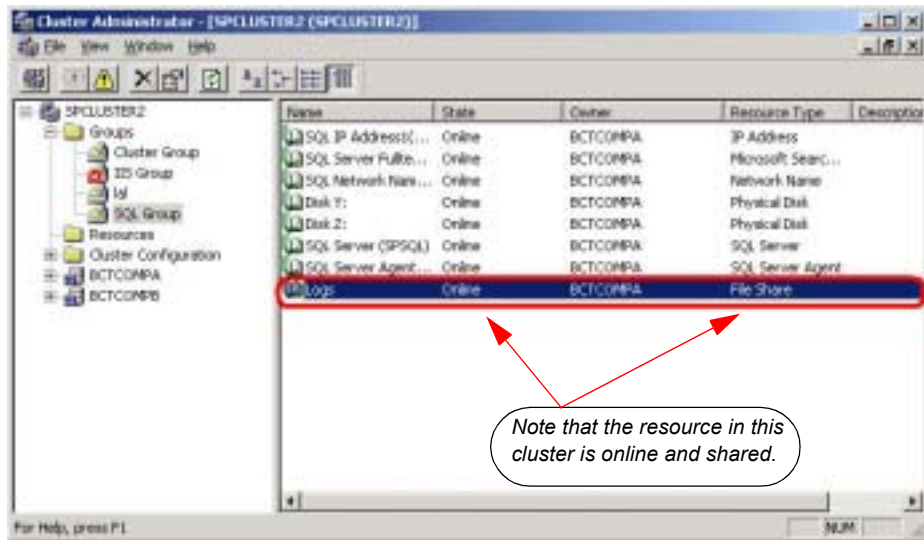
**NOTE:** The list of file share resources will not display the same in all instances of installation due to variations in configurations.

If you are installing **Database Server** and **File Server** at the same group, your installation will look similar to [Figure 5-12 on page 5.24](#).



**Figure 5-12. Cluster File Share Resources**

If you are installing **ONLY Database Server**, at the group, your installation will look similar to [Figure 5-12](#).



**Figure 5-13. Cluster File Share Resources: Database Server**

➤ **To add a dependency to file shares of the clustered drive:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, and then **Cluster Administrator**.
2. Navigate to the **Cluster Group** that you entered during the install, to display the list of file share resources. (In our example in [Figure 5-2 on page 5.8](#), the Cluster Group was **SQL Group**.)
3. Select, then right-click the file share name and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
4. When the **General** tab of the **Disk Properties** window displays, all possible nodes must be listed as **Possible owners**.

*Important!*

**NOTE:** You must take the selected resources offline in order to add a dependency.

5. Select the **Dependencies** tab of the resource **Properties** window, and specify which resources the Cluster services must bring online before this resource can be brought online.
- Important!* 6. You must now bring the selected resource online in order for Secure Perfect to perform.
7. When all file share properties are configured, exit the **Cluster Administrator**.
8. If you have completed all installations, proceed to [“What’s Next?” on page 5.26](#).

## Upgrading a Clustered Environment


Converting or updating from a previous version of Secure Perfect is covered in another section of this manual. Refer to “Upgrading Your 5.0 System to Secure Perfect 6.0” , and then [“Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT” on page 14.59](#).

## What’s Next?

1. Remove the Secure Perfect installation CD from your CD-ROM drive. You have completed the Cluster setup.
2. Proceed to set up or upgrade (if applicable) the First Time License client computer on your Secure Perfect system, that will be running the Secure Perfect application.
3. You must install a first-time client application before licensing can occur.
4. If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1](#).



## Chapter 6: Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition

**NOTE:** This chapter uses the following graphic in major headings to indicate Global Edition instructions. 

This chapter is for experienced software installers and includes instructions for Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition software configuration. Global Edition software introduces technology for copying and distributing data and database objects from one database to another and then synchronizing between databases for consistency. We recommend that you review the entire chapter and discuss with your IT Department before you begin your configuration.



In this chapter:

[“Benefits of Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition” on page 6.2](#)

[“Sample Configuration Overview” on page 6.3](#)

[“Global Edition Definitions” on page 6.4](#)

[“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 6.7](#)

[“Prepare to Install” on page 6.10](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Database Server or Regional Database Server” on page 6.14](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System” on page 6.73](#)

[“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.78](#)

[“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 6.79](#)

[“Server Folder Structure” on page 6.81](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts” on page 6.84](#)

[“Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft Directory File Services” on page 6.85](#)

[“Optional Configurations” on page 6.98](#)

[“Uninstalling a Global Edition System” on page 6.108](#)

[“Troubleshooting Tips for Global Edition” on page 6.110](#)

[“What's Next?” on page 6.112](#)



## Benefits of Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition

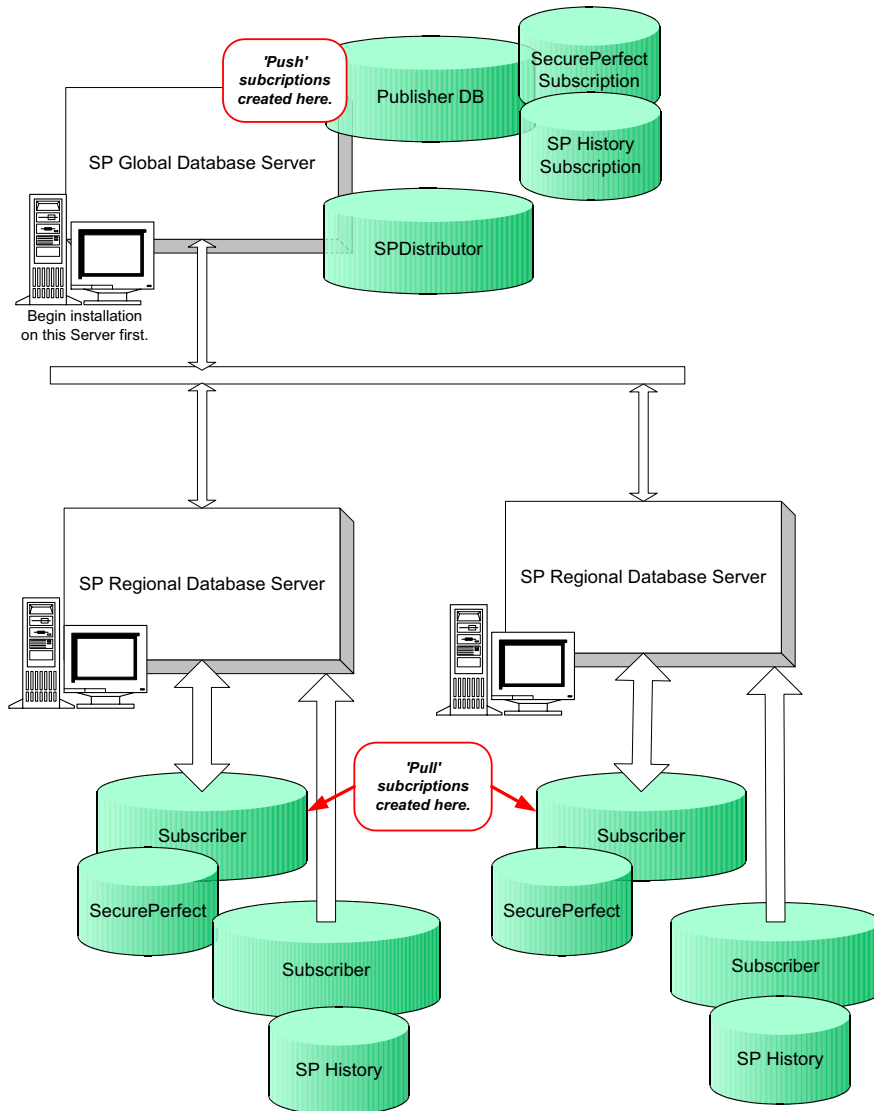
We recommend that you investigate the available Microsoft documentation for additional details and options of replication technology software.

Benefits of Global Edition software solutions include the following:

- Distributing data changes to other Server computers within seconds.
- SQL clustering with redundant Database Servers.
- Does not have a single point of hardware failure.
- Copying and distributing data to one or more sites.
- Allowing multiple sites to keep copies of the same data. This is useful when multiple sites need to read the same data or need separate servers for reporting applications.
- Distributing copies of data on a scheduled basis.
- Working with copies of data while disconnected and then propagating changes to another database when they are connected.
- Enhancing application performance.
- Physically separating data based on how it is used, or distributing database processing across multiple Server computers.
- Bringing data closer to individuals or groups. This helps to reduce conflicts based on multiple user data modifications and queries because data can be distributed throughout the network, and you can partition data based on the needs of different business units or users.
- Data is synchronized by implementing this customized replication configuration. We recommend that you review [Figure 6-1](#) and “[Global Edition Definitions](#)” on [page 6.4](#) through [page 6.6](#), for a greater understanding of the replication features before you begin your configuration process.
- Replication is one choice for customized standby server strategy. Also see “[Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#)” on [page 5.1](#).



## Sample Configuration Overview



**Figure 6-1. Typical Global Replication System Overview**

## Global Edition Definitions

### **Article**

An article is a table of data, a partition of data, or a database object that is specified for replication. An article can be an entire table, certain columns (using a vertical filter), certain rows (using a horizontal filter), a stored procedure or view definition, the execution of a stored procedure, a view, an indexed view, or a user-defined function.

### **Distributor**

The Distributor is a server that contains the distribution database and stores meta data, history data, and/or transactions. In Merge Replication, the Distributor also hosts the Snapshot Agent and Merge Agent for push subscriptions.

When the Distributor is created for an SQL instance, it generates its own database to store information. Once publishing is enabled on the Global Server, it is able to control and monitor publications and subscriptions as well as the starting and stopping of replication agents.

### **Distributed File System (DFS)**

A storage management solution in Windows Server 2003, that enables you to group shared folders located on different Server computer logically by connecting them to one or more hierarchical namespaces.

### **File Replication Service (FRS)**

A multi-threaded replication engine that simultaneously replicates files between linked computers.

### **Global Database Server**

The machine where the Publisher database, the Merge Agent, and the Distributor Agent reside.

The Global Database Server is the main Secure Perfect database server. This means that the Global Database Server acts as a hub for all replication activity. This Global Server hosts a Distributor whose role is to store history and miscellaneous information about merge replication.

### **Merge Agent**

The Merge Agent is used with merge replication. It applies the initial snapshot at the Subscriber, and moves and reconciles incremental data changes that occurred after the initial snapshot was created. Each merge subscription has its own Merge Agent that connects to and updates both



the Publisher and the Subscriber. The Merge Agent typically runs under SQL Server Agent at the Distributor for push subscriptions or at the Subscriber for pull subscriptions.

### **Merge Replication**

One type of replication where the publisher updates all subscriber databases on a schedule with changes from the publisher's database, also all subscriber's database changes are merged with the publisher.

### **Publisher**

The Publisher is a server that makes data available for replication to other servers. In addition to being the server where you specify which data is to be replicated, the Publisher also detects which data has changed and maintains information about all publications at that site.

### **Publication**

A publication is a collection of one or more articles from one database. This grouping of multiple articles makes it easier to specify a logically related set of data and database objects that you want to replicate together.

### **Pull Subscription**

Pull subscriptions are created at the Subscriber, and the Subscriber requests data and updates made at the Publisher. Pull subscriptions allow the user at the Subscriber to determine when the data changes are synchronized, which can be on demand or scheduled.

### **Push Subscription**

Push subscriptions can simplify and centralize subscription administration because you do not need to administer each Subscriber individually. The Distribution Agent or Merge Agent runs at the Distributor when synchronizing a push subscription. Push subscriptions are created at the Publisher, and the replication agents propagate data and updates to a Subscriber without a request from the Subscriber. Changes can also be pushed to Subscribers on a scheduled basis.

### **Regional Database Server**

The machine or machines where the Subscriber Database resides.

Regional Database Servers acts as client database servers. They have the ability to subscribe to publications located on the Global Server. These Regional Servers can operate independently of the Global server for a period of time as necessary. Subscriptions are pushed to each Regional server by the Global Server. This means that the Regional Servers do not

need to worry about requesting updated data from the Global Server; updates are periodically supplied to Regional Servers according to a set schedule.

### **Snapshot Agent**

The Snapshot Agent is used with all types of replication. It prepares schema and initial data files of published tables and stored procedures, stores the snapshot files, and inserts information about initial synchronization in the distribution database. The Snapshot Agent typically runs under SQL Server Agent at the Distributor. There is one Snapshot Agent per publication.

### **Subscriber**

Subscribers are servers that receive replicated data. Subscribers subscribe to publications, not to individual articles within a publication, and they subscribe only to the publications that they need, not all of the publications available on a Publisher.

### **Subscription**

A subscription is a request for a copy of data or database objects to be replicated. A subscription defines what publication will be received, where, and when. Synchronization or data distribution of a subscription can be requested either by the Publisher (a push subscription) or by the Subscriber (a pull subscription).



## Pre-Installation Checklist

**NOTE: READ THIS SECTION IN ITS ENTIRETY!**

- **To assist in configuration of your Secure Perfect Global Edition system, review this checklist:**
  - ☐ Prepare and configure your Global system in this order, as detailed in [“Sequence of Global System Installation” on page 6.8:](#)
    1. First, prepare and configure the Global Database Server.
    2. Second, prepare and configure each Regional Database Server.
    3. Last, prepare and configure any additional client computers to the specific Server in your Global system.
  - ☐ Each Server computer must be part of a new or existing domain. If you are creating a new domain, always consult with the network administrator before adding a domain or adding any computers to an existing network. Refer to [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain” on page 6.9.](#)
  - ☐ Each Server computer must create a new user account for the domain controller on the local computer, such as `globalreplicate`, with permissions as administrator for this group/domain.
  - ☐ Be prepared to license your software for Global Edition.

## Sequence of Global System Installation

- To install a Secure Perfect Global Edition system, follow the sequence below:

**NOTE:** Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow the identical set of instructions. Exceptions are noted and labeled throughout the configuration scenarios.

1. First, prepare and configure the Global Database Server. Install Windows 2000 or 2003 Standard Server, or Windows Advanced Server. Refer to the following:
  - “CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Database Server or Regional Database Server” on page 6.14
  - “CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System” on page 6.73
2. Second, prepare and configure each Regional Database Server. Install Windows 2000 or 2003 Standard Server, Windows Advanced Server, Windows 2000 or XP Professional Server. You must have a Server operating system for file replication.

**NOTE:** Installation follows identical instructions. Exceptions for Regional Database Servers are noted throughout the configuration scenarios.

3. Last, prepare and configure any additional client computers to the specific Server in your Global system. Minimum requirements are Windows 2000 or XP Professional.

**NOTE:** GE Security recommends that you do not add clients or devices to the Global Database Server computer. The Global Database Server in your Secure Perfect system should be dedicated to the replication process.

4. Configure Directory File Services at the Global Database Server.

Your Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition software WILL NOT install unless minimum requirements have been met. Refer to the appropriate section of this manual for the operating system you are installing and configuring.





## Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

Since the Server computer will be part of a new or existing domain, you must add the Server computers to the network.

1. Since network configuration varies from company-to-company, see your network administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** If your Server and client computers participate in a workgroup, add the workgroup name during the installation. We suggest using SECUREPERFECT. Write down the server name and workgroup name as these are required during the client installation.

2. It is important that the Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on page 3.6](#), for more information or consult with your network administrator.

► **To change from the LocalSystem Windows Service Account to an existing domain account:**

In Windows services, the SQLServerAgent must use a domain account. The SQLAgent account is the security context under which the Snapshot Agent, Merge Agent, and Distribution Agent are running by default.

1. Navigate to the **Component Services** of your computer and double-click to display the list of services.
2. From the list of Services (Local), select **MSSQL\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. From the shortcut menu, select **Properties**.

**Result:** The **General** tab of the **Properties** window displays.

4. Click **Stop** under **Service status**.
5. Select and display the **Log On** tab.
6. Select **This account**.

**Result:** The field for account name is now enabled.

7. Enter the name of the domain account that will start and stop SQL services (or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select the name of the domain account).
8. Enter the password for the domain account and then enter the password again to confirm.
9. Return to the **General** tab and verify that **Startup type** is set to **Automatic**.
10. Click **Start** under **Service status**.
11. Click **OK** to accept and close the window.
12. From the list of Local Services, select **SQLAgent\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
13. Repeat [Step “3.” on page 6.9](#) through [Step “11.” on page 6.10](#).
14. Continue with [“Prepare to Install”](#) .



## Prepare to Install

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

*You are  
here!*

**NOTE:** Prepare and configure your Secure Perfect Global Edition system as listed in Pre-Installation Checklist, [“Prepare and configure your Global system in this order, as detailed in “Sequence of Global System Installation” on page 6.8:” on page 6.7.](#)



➤ **To prepare for installation of the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as administrator user to the domain. If not, log out and log back in as a user with administrator permissions.
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer
- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select **SPSQL** instance of SQL Server.
  - When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password **master**.
  - Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.
4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC
    - Windows 2000 Service Pack
    - Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

#### ➤ When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.



3. Continue with “[Selecting Installation Type](#)” .

## Selecting Installation Type

- To select and install Custom as the type of installation:

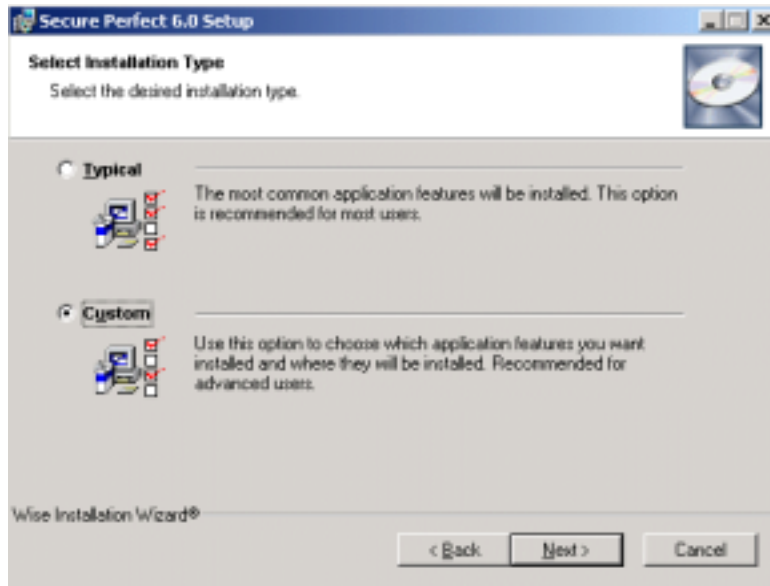


Figure 6-2. Installation Type Window

1. Select **Custom** in the **Select Installation Type** window, as displayed in [Figure 6-2](#). You must select **Custom** in order to install a Secure Perfect Global Edition system.
2. Proceed to one of the following, depending on the operating system you are installing:
  - “[CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Database Server or Regional Database Server](#)” on page 6.14.
  - “[CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System](#)” on page 6.73.

## CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Database Server or Regional Database Server

Recommended for experienced software installers.

### Instructions Specific to Windows 2000, Windows 2003, and Advanced Server:

**NOTE:** Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow the identical set of instructions. Exceptions are noted and labeled throughout the configuration scenarios.

**NOTE:** You MUST select **Custom** in order to do any of the following:

- Install Global Edition features.
- Select Badge aliasing.
- Change the `secure` password.
- Selectively install **Database Server**, **File Server**, or **Secure Perfect Client Application**. These configuration options allow Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by you.

Installing Secure Perfect in a Cluster environment requires special configuration. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment”](#) on page 5.1.

➤ **To begin your Custom installation:**

1. When you select **Custom** as the type of installation and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

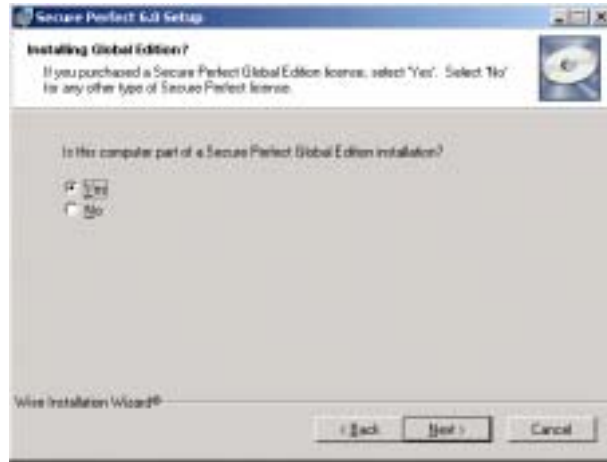
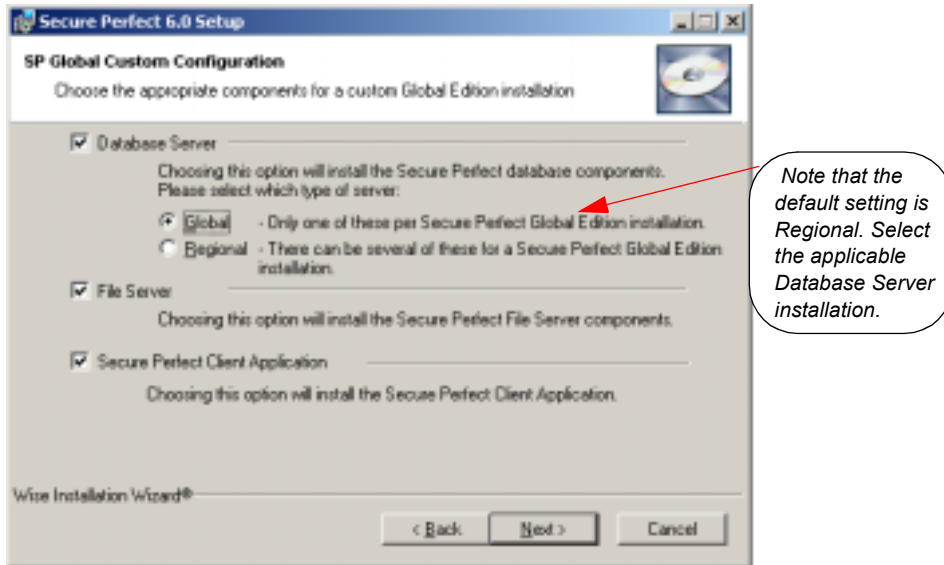


Figure 6-3. Installing Global Edition? Window

2. The **Custom Configuration** window displays for you to choose which Secure Perfect features to configure on this computer. The **Custom Configuration** window displays similar to [Figure 6-4 on page 6.16](#).



**Figure 6-4. SP Global Custom Configuration**

3. Select one or more of the options pertaining to the system you are installing:

**NOTE:** Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin.

**Database Server:** This option is used to store the three databases, SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory.

An additional selection determines if you are installing Secure Perfect on:

- **Global Server** computer (must have SQL Server 2000 already installed)
- Or the **Regional Server** computer (if installation determines that SQL Server is not installed, MSDE will install for you).

**File Server:** Only Secure Perfect File Server components install. This Server stores the data files shared by clients on the Secure Perfect network. File shares include graphics, images, signatures, designs, and firmware. The **File Server** option is a prerequisite in order to install **Secure Perfect Client Application**.





**Secure Perfect Client Application:** Only the Secure Perfect Client application installs. Only Secure Perfect client file shares install. This includes the executable file, Secure Perfect services, and Secure Perfect DLLs.

**Install to Windows Server Cluster Group Named:** Installing in a Cluster environment requires special instructions. Refer to installation of cluster technology in [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment” on page 5.1](#). (SQL Server must be installed.)

4. When you have selected the appropriate options, click **Next**.

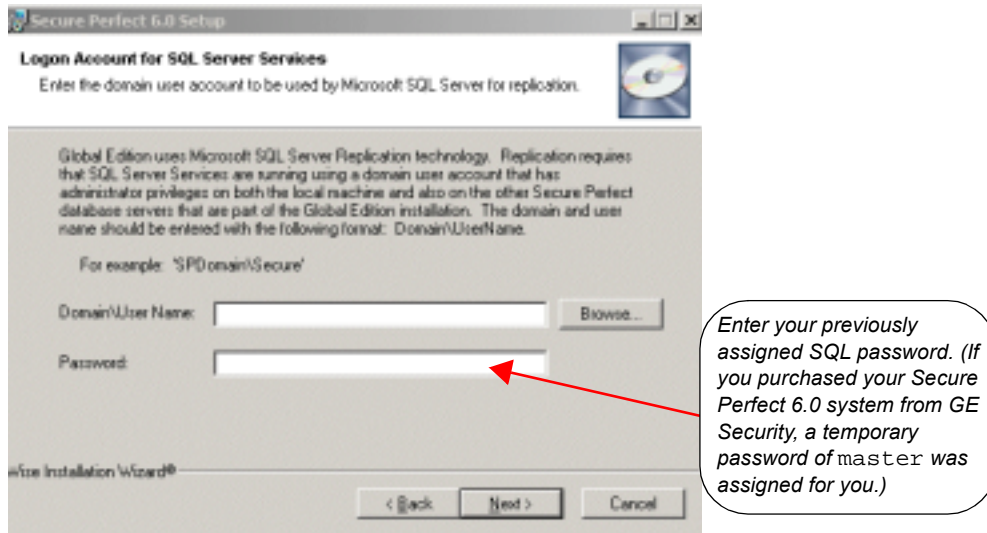
**Result:** The window that displays depends which system you are installing:

- Global Database Server (refer to [“Global Database Server Only” on page 6.18](#))
- Regional Database Server ([“Regional Database Server Only” on page 6.19](#)).

Refer to the appropriate section for your installation.

## Global Database Server Only

**Result:** The **Logon Account for SQL Server Services** window displays, as in [Figure 6-5](#).



**Figure 6-5. Logon Account for SQL Server Services**

**NOTE:** Each Server used in the Secure Perfect Global Edition system requires the database services to run under a domain user name and password account. This account must have administrative privileges to that particular computer. We suggest that you use the identical domain account at each computer used in the GE system.

5. Enter the user domain and username in the format, **Domain\Username** or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select.
6. Enter the domain user password in the **Password** field.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Continue with [“Custom Configuration Options” on page 6.20](#).



## Regional Database Server Only

**Result:** The **Global Database and FileServer Paths** window displays.



**Figure 6-6. Global Database and FileServer Paths at Regional Server**

5. Select a **Global Database Server Name** from the drop-down list of Servers in this domain. The **Database Server Name** and **File Server Name** is unavailable for input.
6. Click **Next** to display the **Logon Account for SQL Server Services** window displays, as in [Figure 6-5 on page 6.18](#).

**NOTE:** Each Server used in the Secure Perfect Global Edition system requires the database services to run under a domain user name and password account. This account must have administrative privileges to that particular computer. We suggest that you use the identical domain account at each computer used in the GE system.

7. Enter the user domain and username in the format, **Domain\Username** or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select.
8. Enter the domain user **Password** and click **Next**.
9. Continue with [“Custom Configuration Options” on page 6.20](#).

## Custom Configuration Options

**Recommended for experienced software installers.**

The scenarios presented in the custom configurations that follow are the result of selections made on the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window. Review [Figure 6-4 on Page 6.16](#) and [Figure 6-1 on Page 6.20](#). Then, proceed to the indicated section of this chapter.

**Table 6-1: Custom Configuration Options**

**NOTE:** Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin. (Windows that display during installation are similar to the sample configurations presented.)




Scenario	Begin on Page:
1.	<a href="#">“Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration” on page 6.21</a>
2.	<a href="#">“Database Server and File Server Configuration” on page 6.37</a>
3.	<a href="#">“Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration” on page 6.44</a>
4.	<a href="#">“Database Server Configuration” on page 6.51</a>
5.	<a href="#">“Each Component on a Separate Computer” on page 6.60</a>

**IMPORTANT:** When you select a scenario, be sure to complete all instructions for that scenario.



## 1. Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration

### Scenario 1: All Components on One Computer

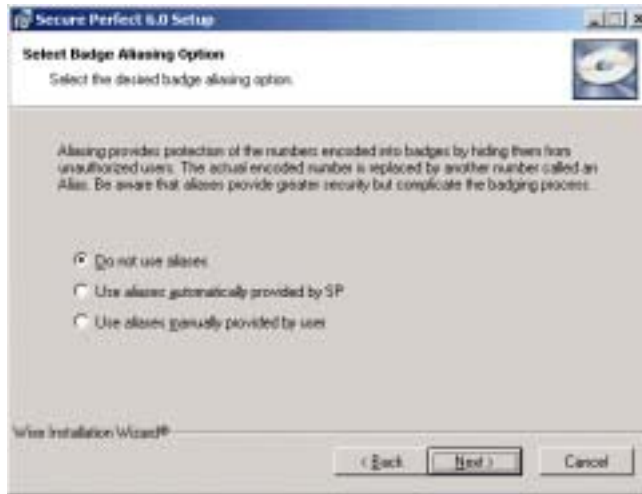
Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server	✓		
Secure Perfect Client Application	✓		

**NOTE:** This configuration has all components installed on Computer 1. Although these are the same components as **Typical**, you chose **Custom** to use badge aliasing or change the 'secure' password.

➤ **If you selected Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 6-7](#).

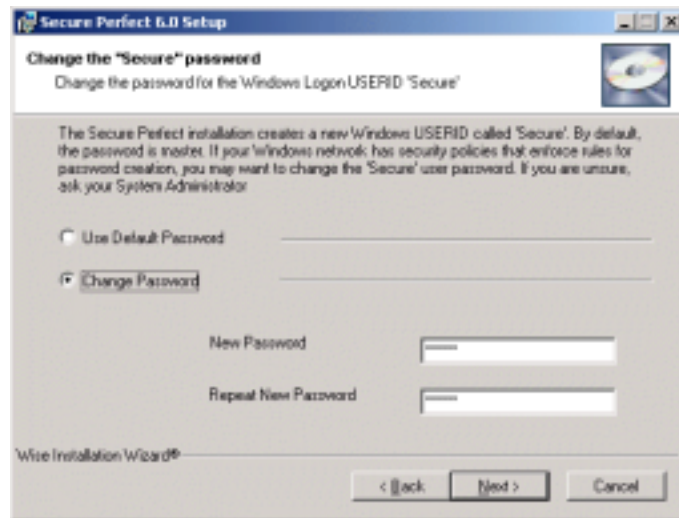
**NOTE:** The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window WILL NOT display when installing on the Regional Database Server computer. Skip this step and proceed to [Step "4." on page 6.23](#).



**Figure 6-7. Badge Aliasing Window**

2. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
  - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
  - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
  - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
3. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘Secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.23](#).



**Figure 6-8. Change the 'Secure' Password Window**

4. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays as in [Figure 6-9 on page 6.24](#).



**Figure 6-9. SQL Server SA Password**

*Enter your previously assigned SQL password here. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)*

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 2.9](#).)
7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** A series of Access Control and Security Management windows display as Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. If your computer reboots, log in and continue. When the **Select Database Server Type** window displays, select **Global** or **Regional** and click **Next**.
11. Continue with "[Creating the Database - Custom Installation](#)" on [page 6.26](#).



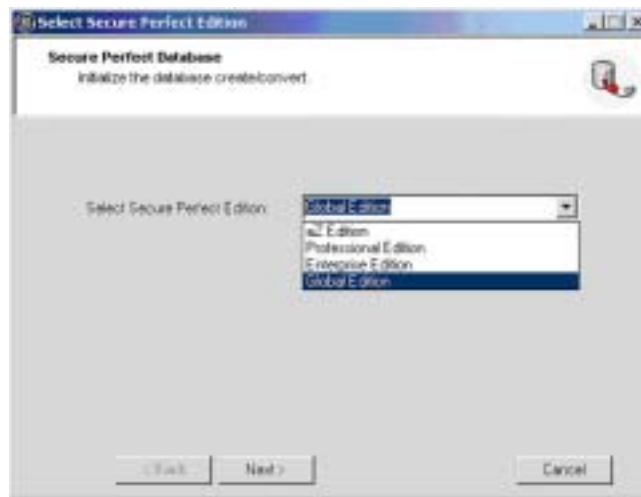


► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

**Result:** A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 6-10](#).



**Figure 6-10. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition**

2. After selecting the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

## Creating the Database - Custom Installation

➤ **To create your system database:**

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays, is appropriate to the system you are installing:
  - Refer to [“Global Database Server Only” on page 6.27](#) for a Global Database Server computer installation. Continue with the instructions listed.
  - Refer to [“Create Database - Regional Server” on page 6.31](#), for a Regional Database Server computer installation. Continue with the instructions listed.

Refer to the appropriate section for your installation.

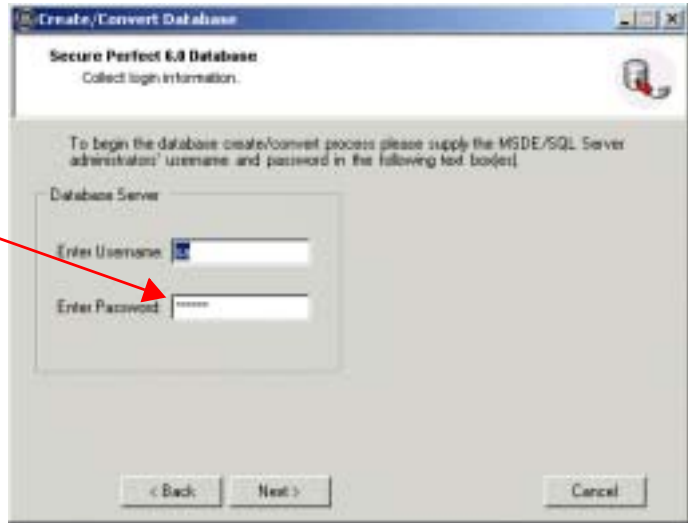


## Global Database Server Only

*Important!*

**NOTE:** We recommend that you DO NOT select **Cancel** in this window, as you are creating the hub of the Global Edition activity. If you choose to create the database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 9.5](#).

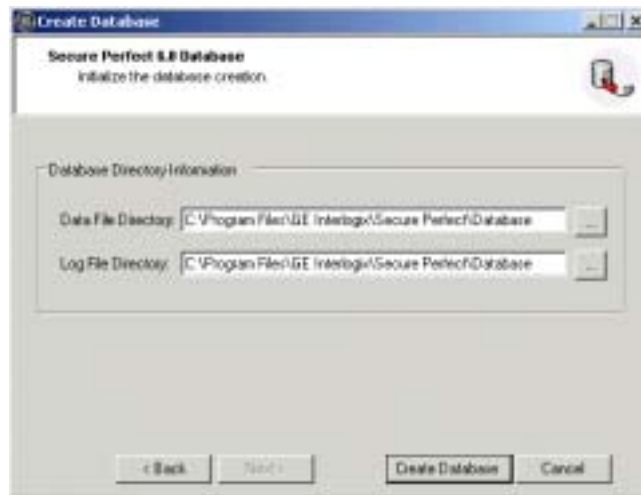
Accept your previously assigned SQL password here. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.0 system from GE Security, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)




**Figure 6-11. Create Database - Global Database Server**


2. Ignore the 'sa' User Name as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE Security, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed
3. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays.



**Figure 6-12. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation**

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
  - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

**NOTE:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.
  - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

**NOTE:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.
5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

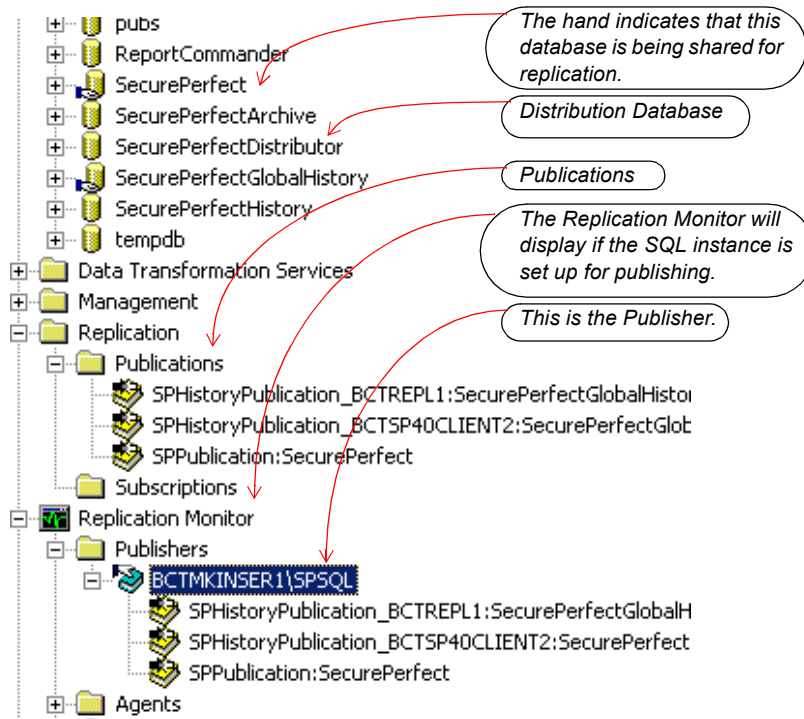
### Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Global Database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

**Table 6-1: Order of Events:  
Global Database Server Database Creation**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | The Global Database Server databases are created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive.   |
| 2 | The SecurePerfectDistributor database is installed and enabled.  |
| 3 | The Global Database Server is configured for publishing. The Publisher is identified by the Global database instance name. In this installation scenario, there is only one Publisher on the Global database instance. Refer to <a href="#">Figure 6-1 on page 6.3</a> .   |
| 4 | The Secure Perfect Merge Publication is defined. To define a publication, the database to be replicated is selected. Within that publication, articles are defined. The articles are representative of the tables contained within the database.   |
| 5 | After the Publication is defined, the initial Snapshot Agent is started. This Agent will create an image of the database at that moment in time. Subscribers will utilize this snapshot later.   |
| 6 | The SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database is created. This database is only present in the Global Database Server of a Global Edition installation. The following history tables are contained within:<br>AlarmHistoryTable<br>BadgeHistoryTable<br>DIHistory<br>DVMRHistory<br>OperatorHistoryTable<br>ZoneHistoryTable |
6. Refer to [Figure 6-13](#) for a sample Global Edition SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

**NOTE:** Subscribers are not defined as part of the Global Database Server installation. Subscribers are assigned during the Regional Database Server installation.

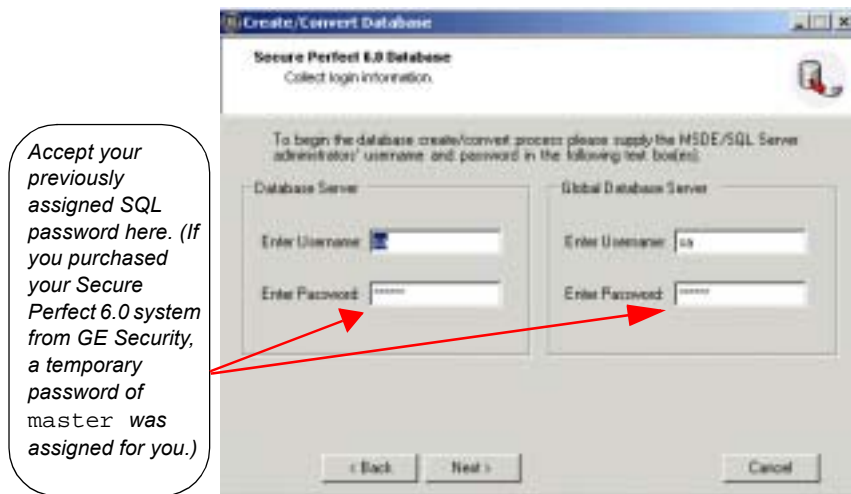


**Figure 6-13. Sample Global SQL Enterprise Manager Structure**

7. Continue with ["To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation" on page 6.35.](#)



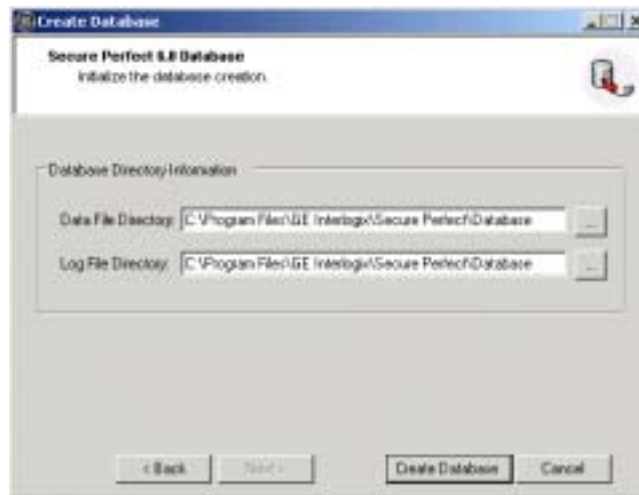
## Regional Database Server Only




**Figure 6-14. Create Database - Regional Server**


2. Ignore the 'sa' User Name as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE Security, a temporary password of `master` was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed
3. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays, as in [Figure 6-15 on page 6.32](#).



**Figure 6-15. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation**

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
  - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

**NOTE:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.
  - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

**NOTE:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.
5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.





If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

### Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

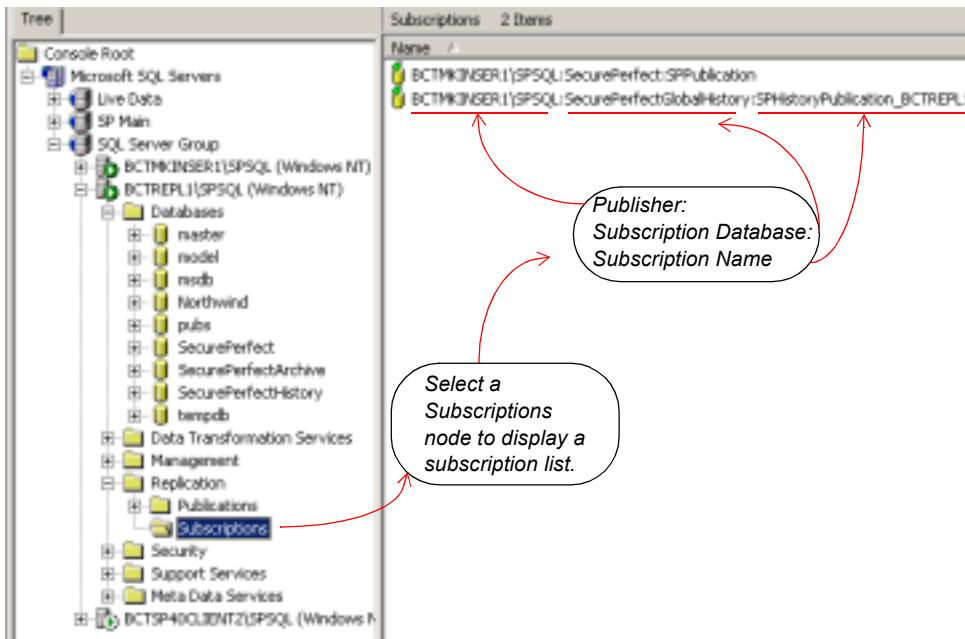
For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Regional Database Server database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

**Table 6-2: Order of Events:  
Regional Database Server Database Creation**

- 1 The Regional Database Server database is created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive.
- 2 The Regional Database Server contacts the SecurePerfectDistributor and Publisher on the Global Database Server.
- 3 The Regional database is added to the Subscriber's list at the Publisher and a new 'push' subscription is created.
- 4 The Snapshot Agent is started (at the Global Database Server computer). When the agent completes the snapshot of the Global database, the snapshot is applied to the Regional Database Server database.
- 5 The Merge Agent is started (at the Global Database Server). This agent, on its initial creation, applies the database snapshot taken by the Snapshot Agent, to the Regional database. A schedule is updated to operate every day, every five minutes, and set to run. As records are added, deleted, or updated on Regional Servers or the Global Database Server, the changes are replicated to all database Subscribers.
- 6 A new history merge publication is created on the Global Database Server. The name of the publication will be similar to the following:  
SPHistoryPublication\_<regionalcomputername>:  
SecurePerfectGlobalHistory. This publication filters history data using a vertical (row) filter.
- 7 A new push subscription is created, a snapshot is started, and the Merge Agent is run.

**NOTE:** For each history publication, there is only one subscription, while the SecurePerfect database publication has multiple subscribers.

6. Refer to [Figure 6-16](#) for a sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.



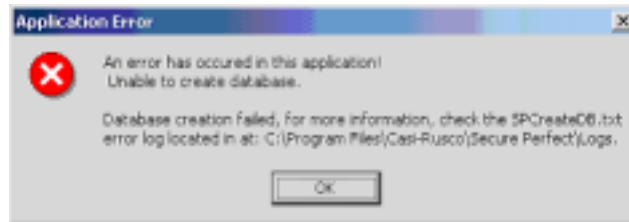
**Figure 6-16. Sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager Structure**

7. Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 6.35.



➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:



**Figure 6-17. Database Creation Error**

2. Correct any installation configuration problems and again, create the database.

➤ **To continue following a successful database creation:**

1. A message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully created!**

**NOTE:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called `SPCreateDB.txt` is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.

2. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The dialog box closes. A window informs you that Installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 is complete.

3. If you receive a message to reboot at this time, click **Yes** to reboot, log in, and continue.

4. **DEPENDING** on the component configuration scenario you are installing:

- If the Secure Perfect Client Application is installed at this time:

An **SP License Setup** window displays. Unless otherwise stated in your configuration scenario, Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.78.](#)

- If Secure Perfect Client Application was NOT installed at this time:

The **SP License Setup** window does not display. If not already removed, remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive. Proceed to the installation of the next component (at another computer) in your configuration option and continue with instructions.

- If File Server is not installed, click **Cancel**:

It is not possible for you to license at this time. Operation of your Secure Perfect 6.0 system is possible at this time; however, the system will start and remain in Demo Mode until you properly license Secure Perfect. (Refer to [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 8.10](#) for a description of Demo Mode.)

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------




*You are  
here!*

**NOTE:** Be sure to complete all instructions for the scenario you are installing.



## 2. Database Server and File Server Configuration

### Scenario 2: Database Server and File Server on One Computer Secure Perfect Client Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server	✓		
Secure Perfect Client Application		✓	

**NOTE:** This configuration has the Database Server and the File Server installed on Computer 1, then the Secure Perfect application is installed on Computer 2.

➤ **If you selected Database Server and File Server on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 6-7 on page 6.22](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 6.22](#).

**NOTE:** The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window WILL NOT display when installing on the Regional Server computer. Skip to [Step “3.” on page 6.37](#)

2. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 6.23](#).

3. In the **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window, select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password**
4. Enter your new password and then enter a second time.

5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user.
7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections of this chapter:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 6.25.](#)

[“Creating the Database - Custom Installation” on page 6.26](#)

*Important!*

11. Return to this step, remove the Secure Perfect installation CD, and continue with instructions to install **Secure Perfect Client Application**. Follow instructions for the operating system installed on your second computer:
    - [“If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:” on page 6.39.](#)
- OR
- [“If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:” on page 6.39.](#)



- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

Continue with instructions as listed in [Chapter 7 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients](#). Follow the instructions for Custom installations.

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system, but DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log in to the computer as the local administrator user of the domain.
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select **SPSQL** instance of SQL Server.
  - When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password `master`.
  - Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer

#### **Installing Non-English Operating Systems:**

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.





7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:” on page 6.41.](#)

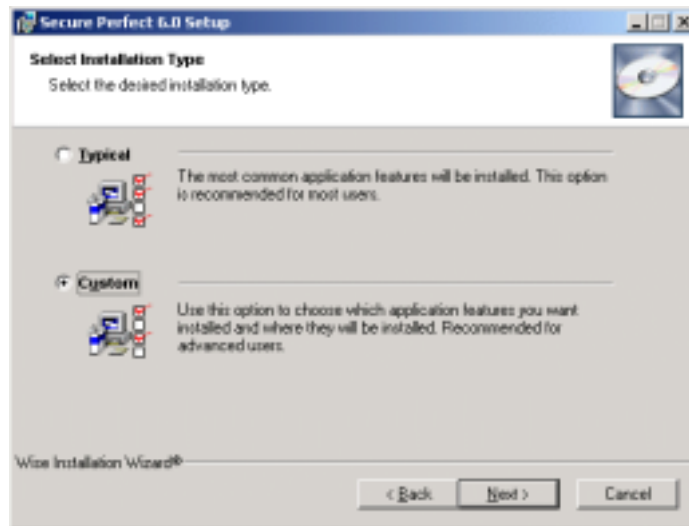
► **When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**.



**Figure 6-18. Select Installation Type - Custom**

4. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays.

5. When asked **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition installation?**, select **Yes**.

6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **SP Global Custom Configuration** window displays.

7. Select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Client Application**.

8. Click **Next**.

9. The **Database and File Server Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 6-19](#).



**Figure 6-19. Database and File Server Paths at Regional Database Server**

10. If the displayed **Database Server Name** is not appropriate, select the appropriate Name from the drop-down list. If the displayed **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.



11. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.23](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 6.23](#).) Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

12. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 6-24 on page 6.58](#). The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

13. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

14. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.




15. Continue with ["Licensing Your Secure Perfect System" on page 6.78](#).

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

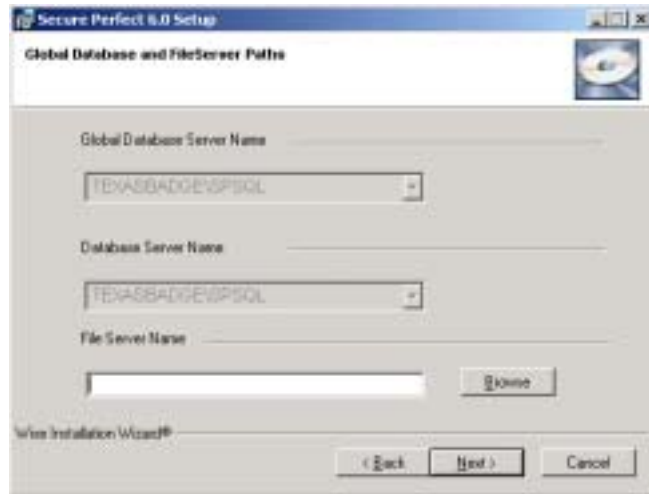
### 3. Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration

#### Scenario 3: Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on One Computer File Server on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server		✓	
Secure Perfect Client Application	✓		
<b>NOTE:</b> This configuration has the Database Server and the Secure Perfect Client Application installed on Computer 1, while File Server is installed on Computer 2.			

➤ **If you selected Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. A window displays similar to [Figure 6-20 on page 6.45](#).



**Figure 6-20. File Server Name Required**

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Global Database Server Name** and **Database Server Name** display as read-only. They are unavailable for entry.
3. If the **File Server Name** displays, accept the entry as listed or click **Browse** to navigate to another computer that may serve as **File Server** for your system, and then select that computer name to display in this dialog box.

**NOTE:** You must install **File Server** on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option**, as in [Figure 6-7](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 6.22](#).

**NOTE:** The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window WILL NOT display when installing on the Regional Database Server computer. Skip this step and proceed to [Step “6.” on page 6.46](#).

5. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays, as in [Figure 6-8](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 6.23](#).

6. In the **Change the 'secure' Password** window, select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

7. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window display as in [Figure 6-9](#). Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user.

8. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

9. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

11. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections of this chapter:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 6.25](#)

[“Creating the Database - Custom Installation” on page 6.26](#)

However, YOU CANNOT LICENSE AT THIS TIME. Click **Cancel** to exit **License Setup**.

**NOTE:** Return to this step and continue with the setup instructions.

12. Click **Yes** to reboot your system at this time. After the reboot, log in as administrator.
13. Continue with configuration of the File Server on a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer.



- **Now, you must select and install ONLY the File Server component on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application installation already complete.

If you do not install the File Server at this time, you will not be able to license your system.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
  - DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC

- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

### **Installing Non-English Operating Systems:**

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 6.48](#).

### **➤ When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.





2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

3. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

4. Select **ONLY File Server**. Click **Next**.

5. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.23](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 6.23](#).) Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated as in [Figure 6-24 on page 6.58](#). You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

9. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

*Important!*

10. The **License Setup** window displays. Proceed to license your system at this time. Refer to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.78](#).

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**




Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

*You are  
here!*



## 4. Database Server Configuration

### Scenario 4: Database Server on One Computer File Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server		✓	
Secure Perfect Client Application		✓	

**NOTE:** This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, then the File Server and the Secure Perfect application are installed on Computer 2.

➤ **If you selected ONLY Database Server component on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 6-20 on Page 6.45](#).
2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Enter the computer name or click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer for your system, and then select the computer to display the name in this field.

**NOTE:** You must install the **File Server** component on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option** as in [Figure 6-7](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 6.22](#). Choose one badge aliasing option and click **Next**.

**NOTE:** The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window WILL NOT display when installing on the Regional Database Server computer. Skip this step and proceed to [Step “5.” on page 6.52](#)

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8](#). See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 6.23](#).

5. In the **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window, select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 6-9 on page 6.24](#). Enter the SQL Server password for the ‘sa’ user.

7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** SP 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. Remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.
11. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 6.25.](#)

[“Creating the Database - Custom Installation” on page 6.26.](#)



- **Now, you must install File Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation already complete.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
  - DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC
    - Windows 2000 Service Pack
    - Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays.
9. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 6.54](#).

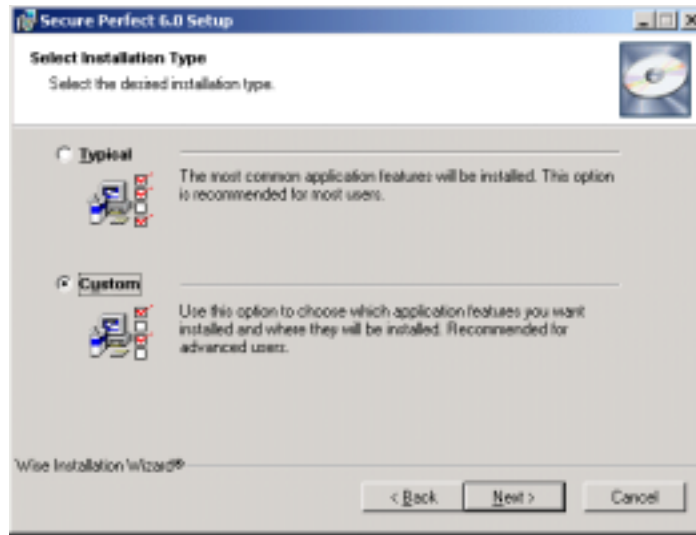
#### ➤ When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.



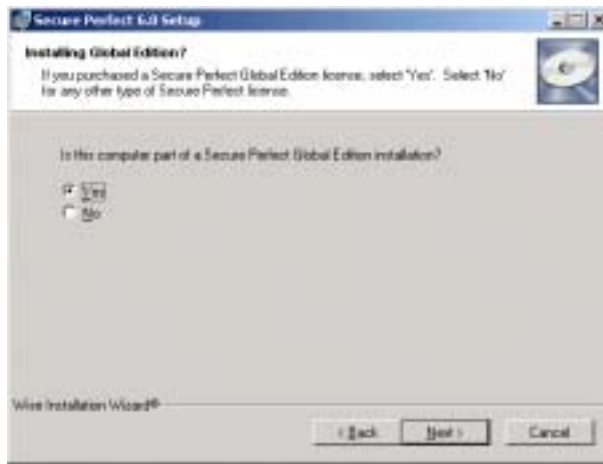
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, select the type of installation as **Custom**.



**Figure 6-21. Selection Installation Type - Custom**

4. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.



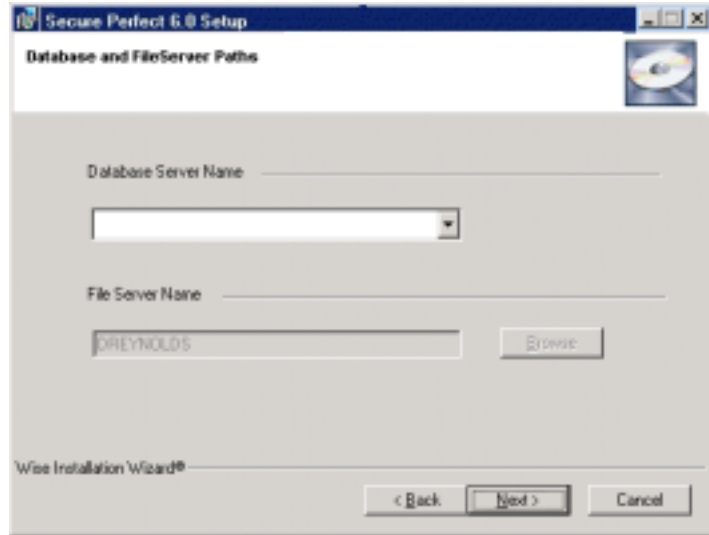
**Figure 6-22. Install Secure Perfect Client/Server Window**

**Result:** The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

5. Select **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Client Application**. Click **Next**.

**Result:** A window displays similar to [Figure 6-23 on page 6.57](#):

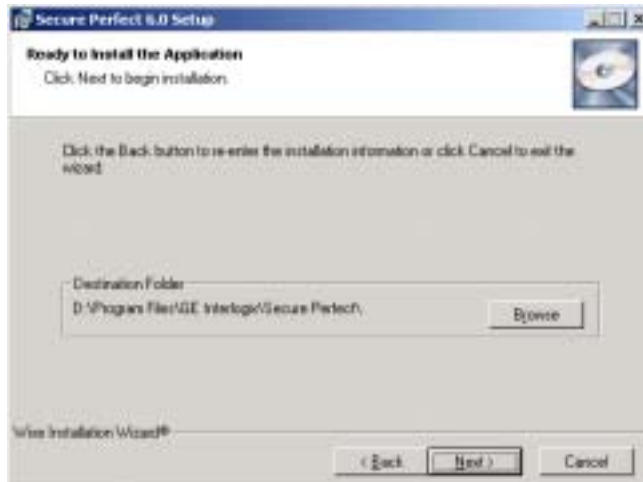




**Figure 6-23. Database Server Name Required**

6. The **Database Server Name** field is available and required. Select a Server Name from the drop-down list of eligible SQL servers for this installation.
7. The **File Server Name** is a read-only field and is unavailable for selection.
8. Click **Next** to display the **Change the 'secure' Password** window, as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.23](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 6.23](#).) Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
9. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 6-24](#).



**Figure 6-24. Custom Install - Destination Folder Path**

**Result:** The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.

**Result:** The SP License Setup window displays.



12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive and continue with [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1.](#)




**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

*You are  
here!*

## 5. Each Component on a Separate Computer

### Scenario 5: Each Component on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	✓		
File Server		✓	
Secure Perfect Client Application			✓
<b>NOTE:</b> This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, the File Server installed on Computer 2, and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 3.			

► **To install each Secure Perfect component to a separate computer, you must begin with the Database Server installation on the first computer.**

1. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Database Server**:

**Result:** A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 6-20 on page 6.45](#).

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer you will be using for your system, and then select the computer name to display the computer name in this dialog box.

**NOTE:** You must install File Server on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option**, as in [Figure 6-7](#). See explanation in [Step “2.” on page 6.22](#). Choose one badge aliasing option and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window WILL NOT display when installing on the Regional Database Server computer. Skip this step and proceed to [Step “5.” on page 6.61.](#)

**Result:** The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8.](#) See explanation in [Step “4.” on page 6.23.](#)

5. In the **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window, select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

6. Click **Next**.

*Enter your sa password as created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 2.9.](#)*

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 6-9 on page 6.24.](#) Enter the SQL Server password for the ‘sa’ user.

7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect Database Server files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
11. Continue by completing the sequence of steps in the following two sections:

[“To select a Secure Perfect edition:” on page 6.25.](#)

[“Creating the Database - Custom Installation” on page 6.26.](#)

- **Now, you must install the File Server to a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**
1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
  2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
  3. You **MUST** log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
  4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.  
  
**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.
    - .NET Framework
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC
    - Windows 2000 Service Pack
    - Windows Installer
  6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
    - DirectX 9.0
    - MDAC
    - Windows 2000 Service Pack
    - Windows Installer



### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

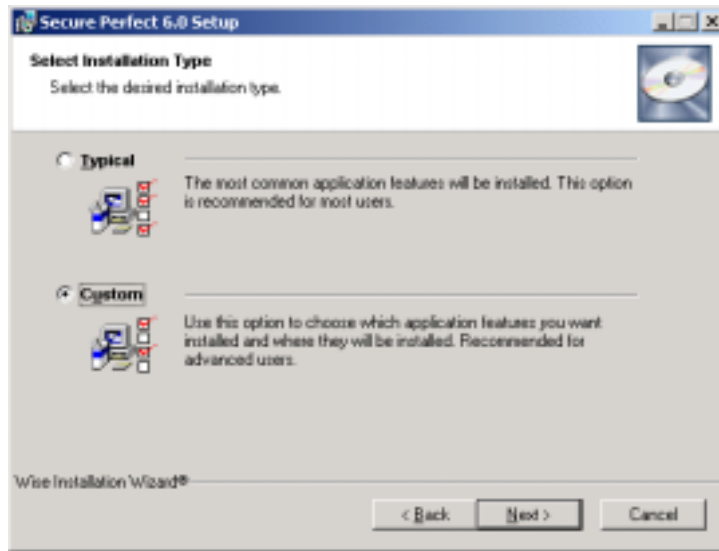
7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 6.63.](#)

#### ➤ When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Select Installation Type** window displays as in [Figure 6-25 on Page 6.64.](#)



**Figure 6-25. Select Installation Type - Custom**

3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.



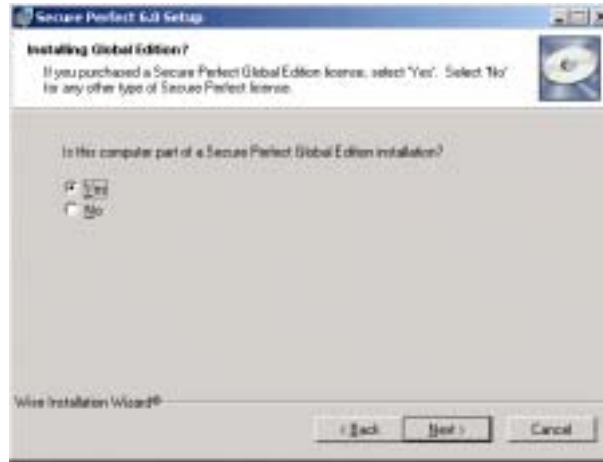


Figure 6-26. Install Secure Perfect Client/Server Window

4. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY File Server**.
5. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.23](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 6.23](#).) Select one of the following:
  - **Use Default Password**
  - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
6. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated as in [Figure 6-24 on page 6.58](#). You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

7. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.
9. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
10. Now, install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Client Application on a third computer.

➤ **If the third computer is Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

Follow the steps as listed in ["Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients" on page 7.1.](#)

➤ **If you choose to install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a third and separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

**NOTE:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. **DO NOT** install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log in to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions. If you are logging into a domain environment, log out and log in as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.



5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
  - DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
  - MDAC
  - Windows 2000 Service Pack
  - Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

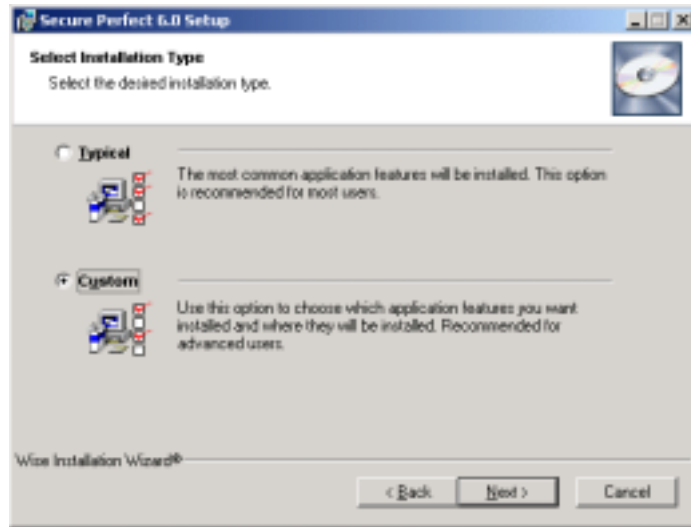
A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the **Welcome** window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 6.68.](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

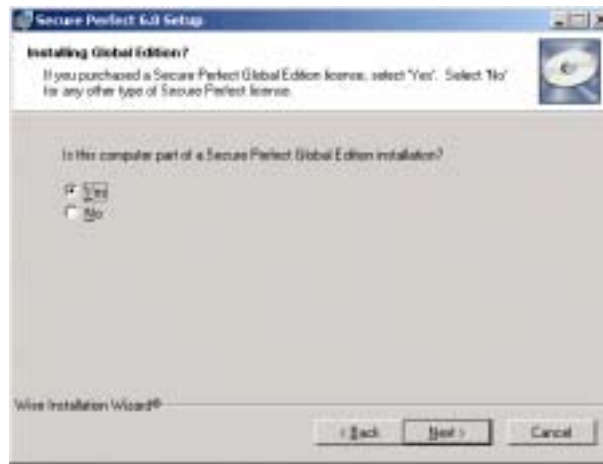
1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**.



**Figure 6-27. Select Installation Type - Custom**

4. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.



**Figure 6-28. Install Secure Perfect Client/Server Window**

5. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Client Application**.
6. The following window displays:



**Figure 6-29. Database and File Server Paths**

7. If the displayed **Database Server Name** is not correct, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the displayed **File**



**Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.

8. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.23](#). (See explanation in [Step "4." on page 6.23](#).) Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 6-24 on page 6.58](#). The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
13. Continue with ["Licensing Your Secure Perfect System" on page 6.78](#).

#### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

*You are  
here!*

## When Global Custom Configurations are Complete:

**NOTE:** Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 6.78, if you have not already licensed.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	<i>You are here!</i>					





## CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.0 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System

### Instructions Specific to Windows Professional Operating System Installations

Secure Perfect 6.0 components CANNOT be individually installed on a Windows Professional operating system. However, you MUST select **Custom** as your installation type if you choose one or more of the following options:

- Global Edition features
- Badge Aliasing
- Change the *secure* Password

➤ If you chose a Custom installation, follow the instructions below:

1. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You MUST be part of a domain to continue.)

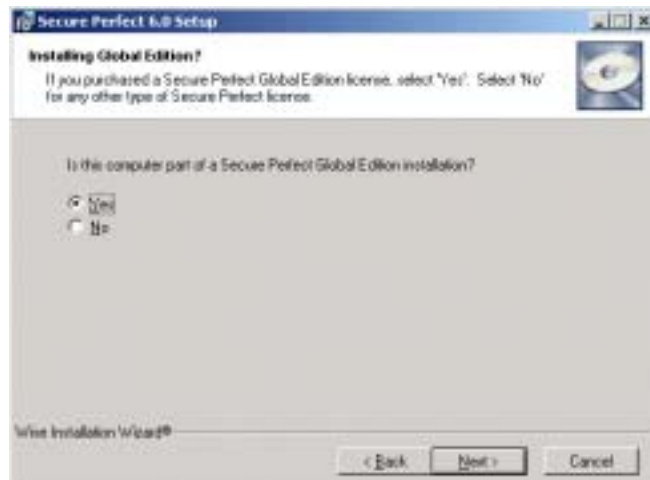
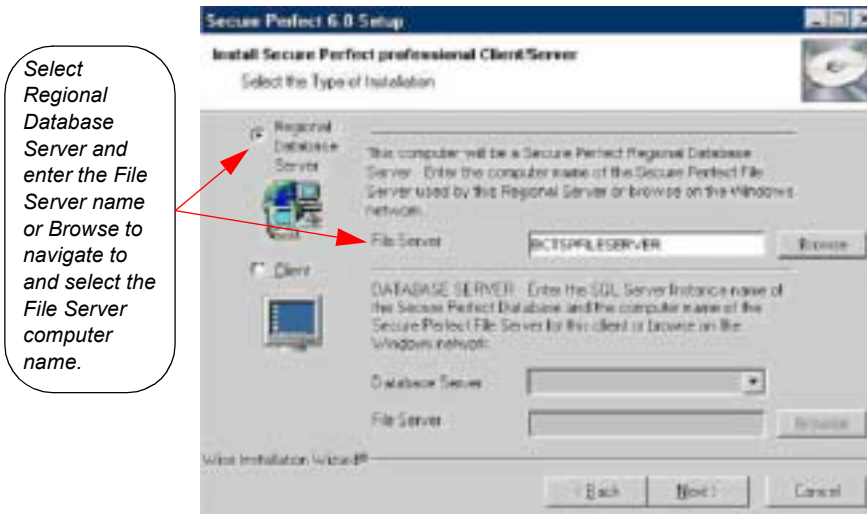


Figure 6-30. Install Secure Perfect Client/Server Window

2. Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

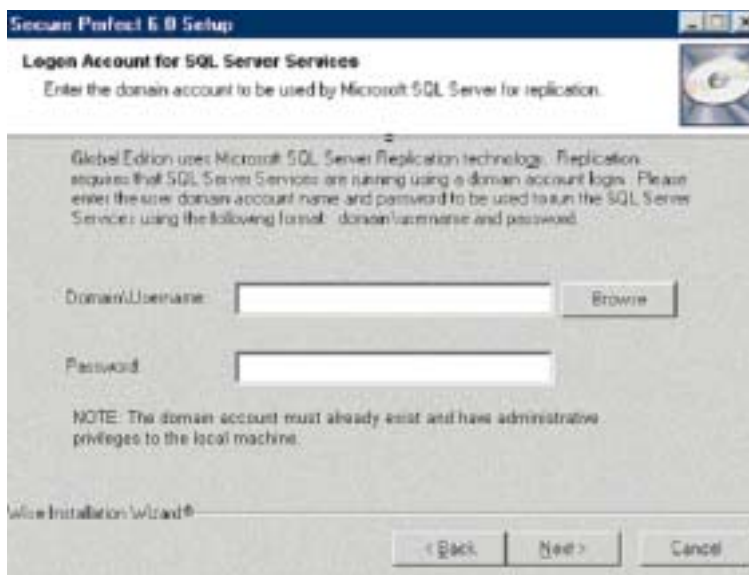
**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays, similar to [Figure 6-31](#).



**Figure 6-31. Install Secure Perfect Professional Client/Server Window**

3. Select **Regional Database Server**. This computer will be the Secure Perfect Regional Database Server.
4. If the **File Server** field does not display the name of the File Server computer used by the Regional Database Server, click **Browse** to navigate the list of Server computers. Select the local computer name to display in the **File Server** field.
5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Logon Account for SQL Server Services** window displays, similar to [Figure 6-32](#).



**Figure 6-32. Logon Account for SQL Server Services**

**NOTE:** Each Server used in the Secure Perfect Global Edition system requires the database services to run under a domain user name and password account. This account must have administrative privileges to that particular computer. We suggest that you use the identical domain account at each computer used in the GE system.

6. Enter the user domain and username in the format, **Domain\Username** or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select.
7. Enter the domain user **Password**. The user must have domain administrator privileges for the local machine. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 6-33](#).



**Figure 6-33. Change the Secure Password Window**

8. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

10. At the **Ready to Install the Application** window, the default destination folder displays. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.



11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.
  12. At this point, the Secure Perfect installation determines if SPSQL instance of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a needs to be installed.
- **Installing MSDE and Service Pack 3a when the required software is not detected on your system:**

1. When the required software is not detected on your system, installation of MSDE and Service Pack 3a continues.
2. When installation of MSDE is complete, the system **automatically** reboots. This takes several minutes.
3. After the reboot, log on as administrator.

**Result:** The database is created and SQL Server 2000 services are started. A progress bar displays the process. An SQL icon displays in the task bar.

**NOTE:** (If any portion of the Global Edition or MSDE is newly installed, you must set up services for a domain account here.)

No user interaction is required during the database creation. Please wait.

➤ **What's next:**

Continue with ["Licensing Your Secure Perfect System"](#) on page 6.78.

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

## Licensing Your Secure Perfect System

➤ **To license your Secure Perfect system at this time:**

After obtaining your registered license key as instructed in [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1](#), follow one of the sequences listed:

- [“First Time License” on page 8.6](#)
- [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 8.8](#)
- [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 8.9](#)
- [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 8.10](#)

*Important!*

**REMINDER:** When you have completed a successful licensing sequence, return to this point and continue.

➤ **After a successful licensing sequence, or if you click Cancel to license at another time:**

1. You may receive an **SP 6.0 Installation Complete** dialog box. If so, click **Yes** to reboot your computer.
2. Log in as administrator and continue with [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 6.79](#).

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
		You are here!				



## Setting Services to Automatic Startup

Now, you need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.0 services start. Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview” on page 9.2](#), for additional information about Secure Perfect Services.

**NOTE:** At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.

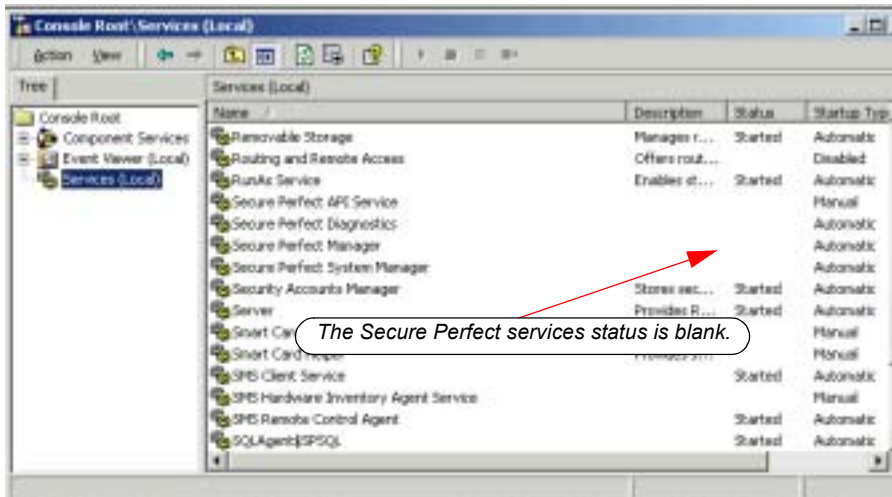
**ONLY Global Database Server Installation:** No services are installed at this point if this is a custom installation and *Secure Perfect Client Application* is not yet installed.

➤ **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays. Expand the list of services and scroll down.

2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.



**Figure 6-34. Secure Perfect Component Services**

3. The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.
  4. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
  5. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
  6. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
  7. Close all windows and applications.
  8. Restart the Secure Perfect Server computer.
- **To start the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service** is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of an Application Program Interface (API) to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings





unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.0 and have been previously licensed.

► **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**

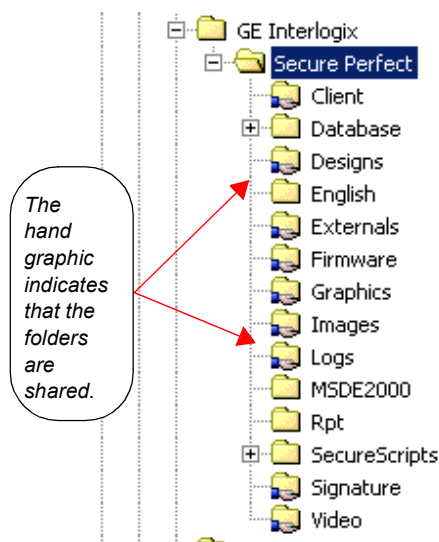
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
  - **Secure Perfect Diagnostic**
  - **Secure Perfect System Manager**
  - **Secure Perfect Manager**
2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
3. Exit the window.
4. Continue with [“Server Folder Structure” on page 6.81.](#)



## Server Folder Structure

1. During installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software, the following folders are created: Client, Database, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Logs, MSDE2000 (if yours is a Windows Professional system), Rpt, SecureScripts, Signature, and Video.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the \\Program Files/GE Interlogix/Secure Perfect folder, or to the folder where your Secure Perfect application installed. The folders displayed here vary with the type of installation:
  - If **Typical Server Type** is selected, all folders are present.
  - If **Custom Server Type** is installed:
    - If only **Database Server** feature is selected, Database, Logs, and SecureScripts folders are present.

- If only **File Server** feature is selected, Client, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Rpt, Signature, and Video folders are present.
  - The MSDE2000 folder will display only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Server.
3. Some of the folders are shared. (Refer to the example in [Figure 6-35 on page 6.82](#).) This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, when logged in as an authorized user.



**Figure 6-35. Typical Server Folder Structure**

## Server Folders

- This is a description of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory:

### Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions.



### **Database**

A shared folder that contains the system database file along with the archive and history database files. SQL Server log files for each database are also found in this folder.

### **Designs**

A shared folder that contains all badge designs used by the imaging stations and sample badge designs.

### **English**

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.0 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

### **Externals**

An empty shared folder created to store reports created by third party report generator.

### **Firmware**

A shared folder that contains the firmware or application code needed to flash the micros.

### **Graphics**

A shared folder that contains maps and icons used for Alarm Graphics.

### **Images**

A shared folder that contains graphics files of captured, badge holder pictures. Sample images are included if you installed the sample database.

### **MSDE2000**

This folder displays ONLY following Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Server installation. The user may use these files if re-installation of MSDE is required. These files (Microsoft SQL Desktop Engine (MSDE) with Service Pack 3a) are used by the system during installation of Secure Perfect 6.0.

### **Logs**

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.0 diagnostic log files.

### **Replication**

This folder is empty if you are not a Global Database Server computer. On a Global Database Server, this shared folder contains a UNC folder that accommodates snapshot data.

### **Rpt**

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

### **SecureScripts**

The scripts and programs used to create the database in SQL Server. It also contains subfolders required for converting and upgrading Secure Perfect systems to Secure Perfect 6.0.

### **Signature**

A shared folder that contains the graphic files of captured signatures.

### **Video**

An empty shared folder created to store video files and JPG image files grabbed from video windows.

Review the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, and continue with [“Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts” on page 6.84.](#)



## **Secure Perfect 6.0 User Accounts**

*Default local group is SPAdmin. Default local user name is secure and the password is master.*

1. During the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer installation, a default Secure Perfect 6.0 local user account was set up for you. If you choose to add users and assign or change user passwords, refer to [“Defining User Accounts” on page 3.7.](#)
2. Refer to documentation you received when you purchased your Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or Windows XP operating system, for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.



**REMINDER:** If you have just completed installation of the Global Database Server, you are now ready to install the Regional Database Server. Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow the identical set of instructions. Exceptions are noted and labeled throughout the configuration scenarios. THEN, continue with ["Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft Directory File Services"](#) on page 6.85.

## Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft Directory File Services

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

*You are  
here!*

**REMINDER:** At this point, you should have configured the Secure Perfect Global Database Server, all Regional Database Servers, and all client computers to specific Servers.

The next step is configuring for file replication at the Global Database Server computer. There is a global database at the Global Server, and a database at each of the Regional Servers. SQL Server 2000 Replication services are used to distribute the data from the Global Server to each of the Regional Servers. File Replication for Secure Perfect shared directories is accomplished using Microsoft Active Directory® in combination with Microsoft Directory File Services® (DFS).

This section includes instructions to configure your system for file replication at the Global Database Server:

1. [“Creating Distributed File System Root” on page 6.86](#)
2. [“Creating a New DFS Link” on page 6.92](#)
3. [“Creating a New Replica” on page 6.94](#)

**NOTE:** The following instructions use examples of Windows 2002 Standard Edition Server. The properties and windows differ somewhat in Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server.

► **Before attempting to set up File Replication:**

- A domain controller does not have to have a Secure Perfect system installed to host File Replication services.
- DFS can only be created on a domain controller computer.
- Verify that all Secure Perfect shared folders on each Server computer intended for participation in replication have **SPAdmin** permission and Domain **Administrator** permissions. Those folders include:

Client  
Designs  
Externals  
Firmware  
Graphics  
Images  
Signatures  
Video

- Verify that the Secure Perfect share folders exist on all Secure Perfect Server computers that will be hosting File Replication.

## 1. Creating Distributed File System Root

The Domain DFS System provides file replication to the Secure Perfect shared folders called DFS root replicas.



► To create DFS root replicas:

1. Select **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, and then **Distributed File System**.

**Result:** The **Distributed File System** snap-in displays as shown in [Figure 6-36](#).

- The DFS file structure should look similar to [Figure 6-36](#).



**Figure 6-36. Secure Perfect Replication File Structure**

2. Select **Distributed File System** and then click **Action** to display a shortcut menu. Select **New DFS Root** from the shortcut menu.

**Result:** The **New DFS Root Wizard** window displays.

3. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Select the DFS Root Type** window displays, as in [Figure 6-37](#).



Figure 6-37. DFS Root Type

4. Select **Create a domain DFS root** option and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Select the Host Domain for the DFS Root** window opens with the **Domain name** displaying in the dialog box, similar to [Figure 6-38](#).



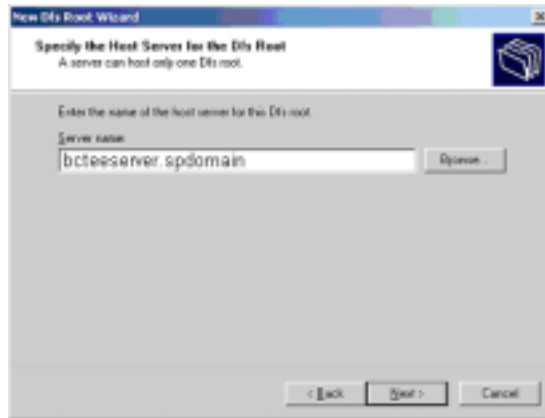
Figure 6-38. Select the Host Domain for the DFS Root





5. Verify that the **Domain name** is accurate. A domain can host multiple DFS roots. Click **Next**.

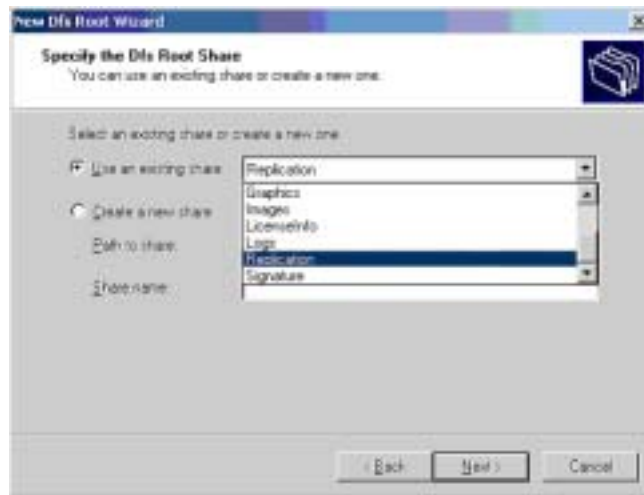
**Result:** The **Specify the Host Server for the DFS Root** window opens.



**Figure 6-39. Specify the Host Server for the DFS Root**

6. Enter the host Server computer name in the **Server name** dialog box or click **Browse** to navigate to the correct Server computer. The Server computer that you select must have Secure Perfect installed before configuring for file replication.
7. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Specify the DFS Root Share** window displays, as in [Figure 6-40](#).



**Figure 6-40. Specify the DFS Root Share**

8. Select **Use an existing share**. From the drop-down list of shared folders, select **Replication**, and click **Next**.

**NOTE:** If the **Replication** folder is not in the drop-down list, then Secure Perfect was not installed correctly on the referenced host Server computer. Click **Cancel**, reinstall Secure Perfect on the Server computer, and begin the process of creating a Domain DFS root, as in [Step “1.” on page 6.87](#).

**Result:** The **Name the DFS Root** window opens with the default folder **Replication** displayed.

9. On the **Name the DFS Root** window:
  - Do not change the **DFS root name** as displayed.
  - Enter `Secure Perfect Replication Share` in the **Comment** dialog box.
  - Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Completing the New DFS Root Wizard** window displays all settings as configured.

10. Review the settings. If you need to change an entry due to discrepancies, click **Back** to return to the appropriate window and

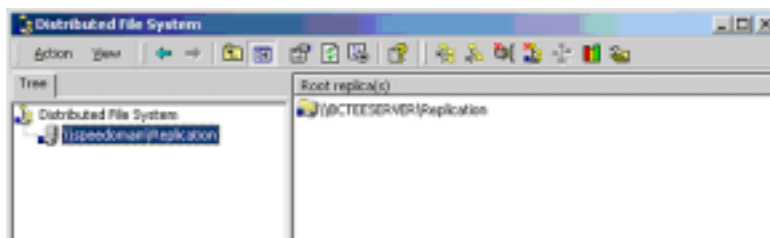


correct the incorrect entry; or you can click **Cancel** to exit the Wizard and begin the process again. Your settings should look similar to [Figure 6-41](#).



**Figure 6-41. Completing the New DFS Root Wizard**

11. When all settings are accurate, click **Finish** to close the Wizard.
12. The Distributed File System snap-in displays similar to [Figure 6-42](#).



**Figure 6-42. DFS Snap-In with the Replication DFS Root**

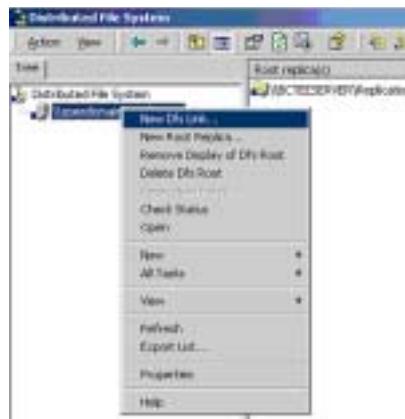
## 2. Creating a New DFS Link

The actual configuration of file shares takes place when you create the DFS links.

**NOTE:** Complete this section for each Secure Perfect file share to be created.

► **To create the DFS link:**

1. Right-click the DFS snap-in to display a shortcut menu as displayed in [Figure 6-43](#).



**Figure 6-43. DFS Snap-In Shortcut Menu**

2. Select **New DFS Link**.

**Result:** The **Create a New DFS Link** window displays similar to [Figure 6-44](#).



Figure 6-44. Create a New DFS Link

3. In the **Create a New DFS Link** window:
  - Enter **Client** as the Secure Perfect **Link Name** folder to replicate. In this example, the folder is **Client**.
  - Enter the path or click **Browse** to navigate to the **Client** share folder on the same computer that has the Replication share configured in [“Creating Distributed File System Root” on page 6.86](#).
  - Enter Secure Perfect Client Folder Share in the **Comment** dialog box.
  - Leave the default **Client cache this referral for 1800 seconds**.
  - Click **OK**.

**Result:** The DFS snap-in with Replication displays similar to [Figure 6-45](#), after the first Client DFS link is created.



Figure 6-45. DFS Snap-In with Replication DFS Root and First Client DFS Link

4. Now, the other file shares can be added as replicas to the main DFS link. Those include:

Client  
Designs  
Externals  
Firmware  
Graphics  
Images  
Signatures  
Video

When complete, your window displays similar to [Figure 6-46](#).

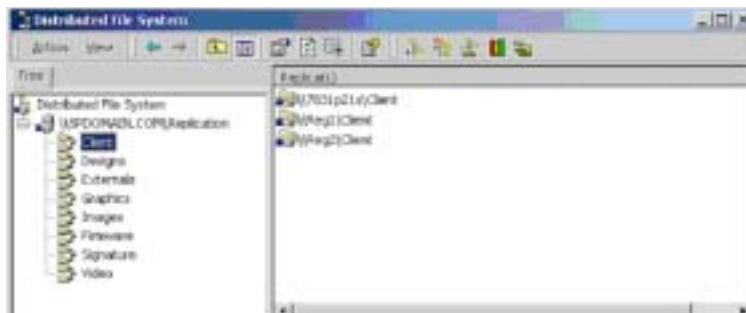


Figure 6-46. DFS Snap-In with Replication DFS Root and Three Client DFS Links

### 3. Creating a New Replica

As many replicas as necessary can be created for a single folder share. Follow the procedures below for each additional Secure Perfect Server computer that will act as a file replication share.

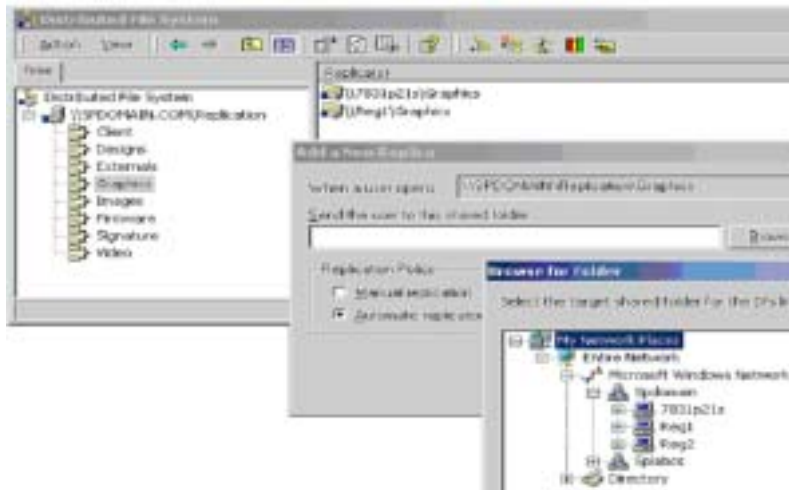
1. Right-click the newly created DFS link to display the shortcut menu and select **New Replica**.

**Result:** The **Add a New Replica** window displays.

2. On the **Add a New Replica** window:
  - In the **Send the user to this shared folder:** field, enter an alternate Server computer name (this computer must have Secure Perfect installed) or click **Browse** to navigate to an



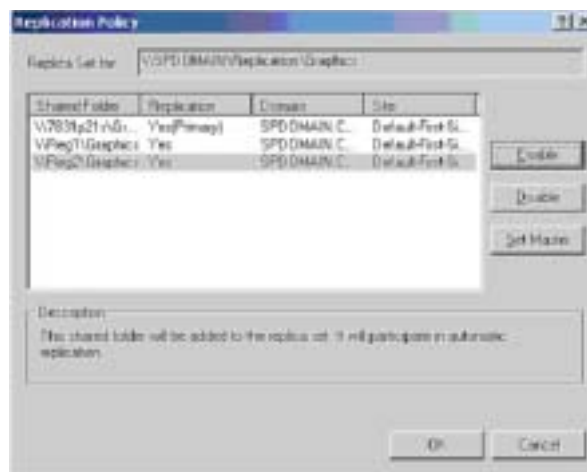
alternate Server computer. At this point, your windows should look similar to [Figure 6-47](#).



**Figure 6-47. Adding a New Replica**

- From the **Replication Policy** options, select **Automatic replication**, if not already selected.
- Click **OK**.

**Result:** At this time, because at least two shared folders exist, the **Replication Policy** window displays as in [Figure 6-48](#).



**Figure 6-48. Replication Policy**

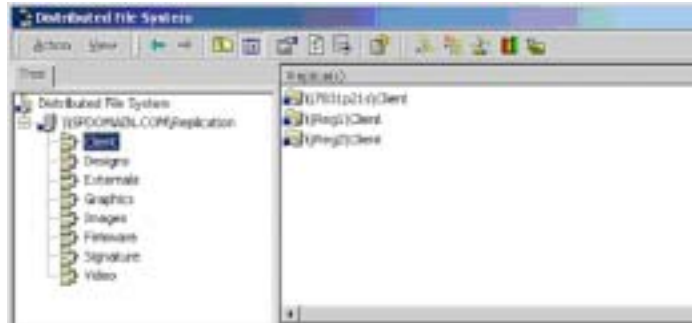
**NOTE:** If you have additional Server replicas (shares) to add to this particular folder (in this example, the folder is **Graphics**), return to [“Creating Distributed File System Root”](#) on page 6.86.

Repeat instructions for each additional replica.

3. To return later to the **Replication Policy** wizard, right-click the DFS link to display the shortcut menu and select **Replication Policy**.
4. In the **Replication Policy** window:
  - Select the **Shared Folder** that contains the primary DFS link.
  - Click **Set Master**.
  - Select the next **Shared Folder** and click **Enable**.
  - Select all additional **Shared Folders** and click **Enable**.
  - When the Master is set and all shared folders are enabled, click **OK**.

**Result:** The DFS Snap-in displays similar to [Figure 6-49](#).





**Figure 6-49. DFS Snap-In with Shared Folders Added and Enabled for Replication Services**

**NOTE:** Your Secure Perfect Global Edition system is now configured for replication. The File Replication process for added, revised, or deleted files can take from five minutes to approximately one hour.

## Optional Configurations

This section includes the following topics:

1. [“Converting the Global Database Server” on page 6.98](#)
2. [“Backup of Global Edition Databases” on page 6.101](#)
3. [“Restoring Global Edition Databases” on page 6.102](#)
4. [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 6.104](#)

### 1. Converting the Global Database Server

**NOTE:** Conversion of a database to a Regional Server is not allowed.

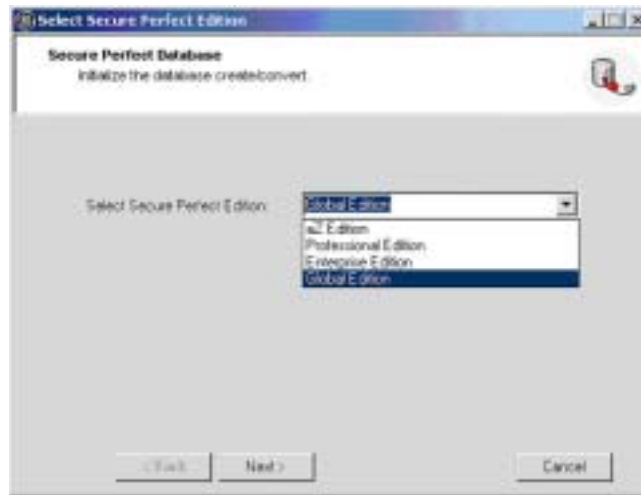
An existing Secure Perfect database can only be converted to a Global Database Server. If you are creating or converting a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence:

1. Navigate to the Secure Perfect directory of your computer and double-click `SPCreateDB.exe`.

OR

From the **Start** menu, click **Start, Programs**, then **Secure Perfect**. The Secure Perfect menu displays. Select **Create SP Database**.

**Result:** A window displays, as in [Figure 6-50](#).



**Figure 6-50. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition**

2. After selecting the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, click **Next** to proceed with converting your database.

**Result:** The **Create/Convert Database** login information window displays.

3. Enter the applicable administrator **Username** and **Password**.
4. Click **Create/Convert Database**.

**Result:** The message **Do you wish to convert to the current version of Secure Perfect Database?** displays.

5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

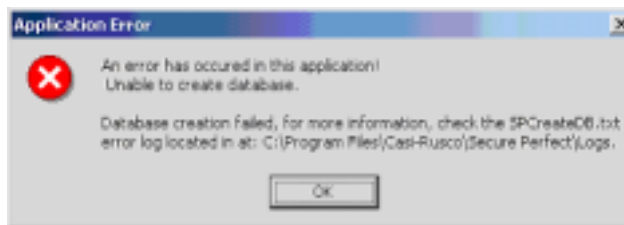
**Result:** The **Convert Database** window displays.

6. Click **Convert Database**.

**Result:** A status bar displays the progress of the conversion. The order of events that are taking place during the conversion are listed in the table, "[Order of Events: Global Database Conversion](#)".

**Table 6-1: Order of Events: Global Database Conversion**

- 1 **SecurePerfect**, **SecurePerfectHistory**, and **SecurePerfectArchive** databases are converted.
  - 2 All convert **.sql** files run; and tables, stored procedures, key, and logins are created.
  - 3 The Distributor is enabled and Distribution database is created. The database name is **SecurePerfectDistributor**.
  - 4 The Global database instance is set up as a Publisher.
  - 5 A Publication is created with the Articles to be replicated. The Publication name is **SPPublication**.
  - 6 The Snapshot agent is started. This agent runs for the publication **SPPublication** to make a copy of all items specified in the Publication at that moment in time.
  - 7 **SecurePerfectGlobalHistory** database is created.
7. If errors occurred during the database creation, a message may display, similar to the following:



**Figure 6-51. Database Creation Error**

8. Click **OK**.



**NOTE:** A log file is created when the \\Create\\Convert Database program is run. The log files are found in the \\Secure Perfect\\Logs folder.

9. Correct any configuration problems. Again, convert the database.

**Result:** Upon completion, a message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully converted.**

10. Click OK.

**Result:** The dialog box closes.

## 2. Backup of Global Edition Databases

**NOTE:** The following information is an overview of processes for database backup. For additional information, refer to Microsoft SQL Books Online.

Remember to back up databases often.

### Backing Up the Global Server Databases

Backups should be performed as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server”](#) on page 11.1.

**NOTE:** In addition to the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive database, the Global Server has the SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database. Depending on the timing of the backup, the SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database may contain little or nothing. It is advisable to perform a backup on all four databases.

### Backing Up the Regional Server Databases

Backups should be performed as instructed, depending on the operating system you are backing up:

1. [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server”](#) on page 11.1.

OR

2. [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server”](#) on page 12.1

### 3. Restoring Global Edition Databases

**NOTE:** The following information is an overview of processes for restoring to a single computer, of the same database. For additional information, refer to Microsoft SQL Books Online.

It is advisable to restore only one region at a time, including the Global Database Server. Do not restore two or more regions or a region and a Global Database Server system at the same time.

#### Restoring at the Global Database Server

**SecurePerfectHistory:**

Restore as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1.](#)

- If the history database needs to be restored, any data that was inserted into the history database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the other Regional databases.
- The time that this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.
- If the backup is more than 14 days old, or the data from different regions has already been archived, the history will not synchronize all data. The data will still be in the Regional Server’s history or archive databases.

**SecurePerfectArchive:**

Restore as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1.](#) This database does not directly participate in replication.

**SecurePerfect:**

Restore as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1.](#)

- Data that was inserted into the database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the other Regional databases.
- The time this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.



## Restoring at the Regional Database Server

### SecurePerfectHistory:

Restore as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1](#) OR [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server” on page 12.1](#)

- If the history database needs to be restored, any data that was inserted into the history database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the other Regional databases.
- The time that this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.
- Restoring a backup database that is older than the most recent archive may cause duplicate data to be inserted at the Global Server.

### SecurePerfectArchive:

Restore as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1](#) OR [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server” on page 12.1](#). This database does not directly participate in replication.

### SecurePerfect:

Restore as instructed in [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1](#) OR [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server” on page 12.1](#).

- Data that was inserted into the database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the Global and Regional databases.
- The time this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.

## 4. Adding Additional Clients to the Database

### Pinging Additional Client Computers

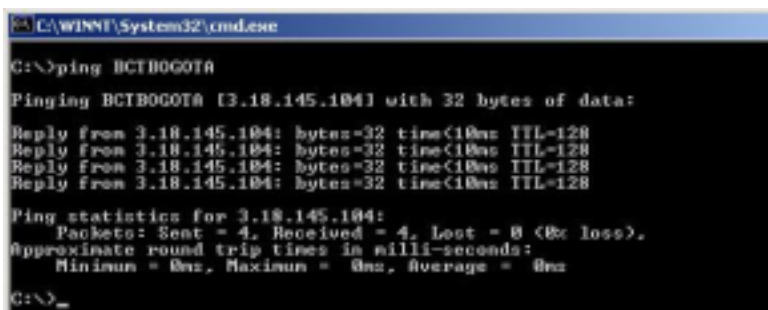
In order to add an additional client computer in the database, you must verify that the computer can be reached by name.

➤ **To reach the client computer:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

**Result:** A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <name>` where `name` is the name of the client computer. Press **Enter**.



```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe
C:\>ping BCTBOG0T0
Pinging BCTBOG0T0 [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms
C:\>_
```

**Figure 6-52. Successful Ping to Client Computer**

**Result:** A successful ping reveals the client computer address was reached. Your screen will display similar to [Figure 6-52](#). Proceed to add the clients to the database. Refer to [“Adding Clients to the Database” on page 6.105](#).





OR

```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe
Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping het-creed-pass1

Pinging het-creed-pass1 [3.18.145.157] with 32 bytes of data:

Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.157:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

H:\>
```

**Figure 6-53. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer**

**Result:** If the client computer could not be reached, your screen will display similar to [Figure 6-53](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup (“[Preparing the Operating System](#)” on [page 2.4](#) for an Windows 2000 Standard Server or “[Preparing the Operating System](#)” on [page 3.4](#) for a Professional Server) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved. Contact your network administrator.

4. Continue with “[Adding Clients to the Database](#)” on [page 6.105](#).

## Adding Clients to the Database

You need to add all client computers to your Secure Perfect database that will be in your Secure Perfect system. To do this, log in and start the Secure Perfect 6.0 application.

### ► To add clients to the Secure Perfect 6.0 database:

1. When you have installed and licensed the Secure Perfect application for the first time (this is the First Time License computer), start the Secure Perfect 6.0 application by double-clicking the Secure Perfect desktop icon.

- **Typical Installation:** The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
- **Custom Installation:** The components required to license may be stored on two separate computers:
  - The File Server stores the LicenseInfo file.
  - The First Time License computer stores the Component Services files.

You must be able to reach the computer(s) for both sources.

2. From the **File** menu, select **Login**.

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
				You are here!		

3. Log in as `secure` with a password of `master`.
4. If client computers have Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional installed and if they are on the network, you can access the Client Form in the Secure Perfect application, and proceed with adding clients to the database.

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**


Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
					You are here!	




► **To access the Client Form:**

1. Select **Client** from the **Administration** menu.

**Result:** A new client form is displayed.

2. Click **Add**  from the Secure Perfect main menu.
3. Enter data describing your new client. Refer to Online Help for details of each individual field.

**NOTE:** If a client computer is currently offline or connected to the network by a gateway or hub, you may not see that computer. You may need to correct network issues with the client computer before proceeding. You may also see computers that cannot be clients if they do not use TCP/IP protocols.

4. Click **Save** .
5. Repeat [Step “2.” on page 6.107](#), through [Step “4.” on page 6.107](#), for all clients.
6. You can add as many clients as you want. However, only the licensed maximum number can connect to the server at the same time. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12](#).

## Uninstalling a Global Edition System

The sequence of uninstalling a Secure Perfect Global Edition system is a reverse of the installation and enabling process. The following instructions assume an un-install of all computers in a Global Edition system.

► **To uninstall Secure Perfect Global Edition:**

1. Log off Secure Perfect clients.
2. Close all Secure Perfect applications such as DiagView.
3. You **MUST** be logged in as administrator user to the domain. If not, log out and log back in as a user with administrator permissions.
4. Stop all Secure Perfect services. (Secure Perfect Manager, Secure Perfect System Manager, and Secure Perfect Diagnostics). Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview” on page 9.2](#).
5. OPTIONAL: If you choose, do a backup of your databases. Refer to [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1](#). Complete your backups as instructed.
6. OPTIONAL: To disable DFS services at the Global Database Server computer, refer to the following. All shared files will remain unless manually removed.
  - Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Distributed File System**. Return to this point and continue.
  - Locate and expand the Secure Perfect DFS Root to display all Replicas.
  - Select a Replica and right-click to display the shortcut menu and select **Replication Policy**.
  - When the **Replication Policy** window opens, select a shared folder and click **Disable**.
  - Continue until all shared folders of this Replica are disabled.
  - Exit the **Replication Policy** window
  - Repeat this process for all Replicas and all shared folders.



- Exit the **Distributed File System** window.
7. To uninstall the Secure Perfect application, refer to [“Uninstalling Secure Perfect or Deleting a Database” on page 13.1.](#) for further instructions. Process in this order:
    - Uninstall Secure Perfect client computers to a Regional Database Server.
    - Uninstall Secure Perfect Regional Database Servers.
    - Uninstall the Secure Perfect Global Database Server.
  8. To disable Publishing at the Global Database Server:
    - Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
    - Select the SQL Global Server.
    - Select **Tools, Replication**, then **Disable Publishing**.
    - From the **Disable Publishing and Distribution Wizard**, select **Yes** to Disable Publishing.
    - Exit **Enterprise Manager**.
  9. OPTIONAL: Delete Secure Perfect databases at the Global Database Server.
  10. OPTIONAL: Uninstall File Replication in DFS as follows:
    - In Active Directory, Users and Computers, select Action, and then Advanced Features.
    - Expand to display the folder Tree by clicking **System, File Replication System, DFS Volume**, and **Replication**. Delete all DFS links to Secure Perfect.
    - Delete all Replicas.
    - Delete the DFS Root.

If you plan to re-install, you do not need to delete this file structure.

11. If you plan to re-install, you can restore a database from your backup. Refer to [“Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server” on page 11.1](#) for instructions.

## Troubleshooting Tips for Global Edition

- **Converting an existing database to a Regional Server returns error messages and the database creation fails.**

Conversion to a Regional Server is not allowed. An existing Secure Perfect database can only be converted to a Global Database Server.

- **Subscription to Publication database-name is invalid.**

Run `SELECT @@SERVERNAME` in Query Analyzer on both the Global Database Server and the Regional Database Server. If either name does not match its related Server Computer name, run the following on the affected server:

```
sp_addserver <real-server-name>, LOCAL
```

If this gives an error message stating that the name already exists, then use the following sequence:

```
sp_dropserver <real-server-name>
```

```
go
```

```
sp_addserver <real-server-name>, LOCAL
```

```
go
```

If the error message states, There is already a local server, then use the following sequence:

```
sp_dropserver <old-server-name>
```

```
go
```

```
sp_addserver <real-server-name>, LOCAL
```

```
go
```

Stop and restart SQL Server.

- **Event Log contains the following error message:**

The File Replication Service is having trouble enabling replication from <remoteservername> for <directory> using the DNS name <remoteservername>. FRS will keep retrying. Following are some of the reasons you would see this warning.



- [1] FRS cannot correctly resolve the DNS name <remoteservername> from this computer.
- [2] FRS is not running on <remoteservername>.
- [3] The topology information in the Active Directory for this replica has not yet replicated to all the Domain Controllers.

This event log message will appear once per connection. After the problem is fixed, you will see another Event Log message indicating that the connection has been established.

### Solution 1:

System times may not be synchronized. To resolve, synchronize with the domain controller clock time.

- a. Run the following command on all computers to synchronize the clock time with the domain controller:

```
Net time \\<(domain controller name) /set /y
```

- b. Stop and then restart the File Replication Service on all servers that are experiencing the problem.
- c. Open Event Viewer to make sure that the errors are not longer occurring.

### Solution 2:

The domain name for the server may not be represented in the DNS Snap-in. Click **Start, Programs, Administration Tools, DNS**. The DNS displays. Expand the node for the domain. Make sure that the Server computer name displays under the domain root. If the Server computer name is not here, but it is in the Active Directory Users and Computers Snap-in, the FRS will not recognize the Server computer as part of the domain.

### ► Experiencing space issues.

Consider cleaning out your Secure Perfect/Replication folder.

- **An error message displays when attempting to add a device to another Region within the Secure Perfect Global system. The message informs the operator that addition of the device is in excess of the license limit for that Region.**

From the **Administration** menu, select **Region**. When the Region Form opens, click **Search** and select the Regional Server computer in question from the list box on the right. The License Info at the bottom of this form displays the current licensing capabilities of the selected Region. Review the license capabilities. If limits for a device have been reached, additional devices cannot be added at this time.

## What's Next?

1. Remove the Secure Perfect installation CD from your CD-ROM drive. You have completed the Global setup.
2. Proceed to set up additional Regional Server computers on your Secure Perfect system.
3. If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1.](#)
4. Proceed to set up the additional client computers on your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients” on page 7.1.](#)

**NOTE:** Following configuration of each new client installation, all currently installed Secure Perfect Global Edition Server computers and client computers must be rebooted in order to be recognized.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
						<i>You are here!</i>



# Chapter 7: Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients

This chapter includes instructions for installation and configuration of Secure Perfect 6.0 on additional client computers. These computers can be communication clients for hosting micros and digital video recorders, and available as Imaging stations. Follow instructions in the order presented.



In this chapter:

- [“Defining Additional Clients” on page 7.2](#)
- [“Pinging the First Time License Computer” on page 7.2](#)
- [“Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Client Computer” on page 7.4](#)
- [“TYPICAL Installation” on page 7.6](#)
- [“CUSTOM Installation” on page 7.10](#)
- [“Licensing the Client Computer” on page 7.16](#)
- [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 7.16](#)
- [“Logging In to Client Computer” on page 7.19](#)
- [“Viewing Imaging Status” on page 7.20](#)
- [“Modifying/Removing Clients” on page 7.23](#)
- [“Client Folder Structure” on page 7.23](#)
- [“What’s Next?” on page 7.25](#)

## Defining Additional Clients

If you have not already done so, you must add the client computers to the Secure Perfect 6.0 database before installing the Secure Perfect 6.0 software on the additional clients. Refer to [“Adding Clients to the Database” on page 4.72.](#)

## Pinging the First Time License Computer

Verify that you can reach the First Time License computer by computer name before you install Secure Perfect on additional clients.

- **Typical Installation:** The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
- **Custom Installation:** The file components required to license may be stored on two separate computers:
  - The File Server stores the LicenseInfo file.
  - The First Time License computer stores the Secure Perfect Component Services files.

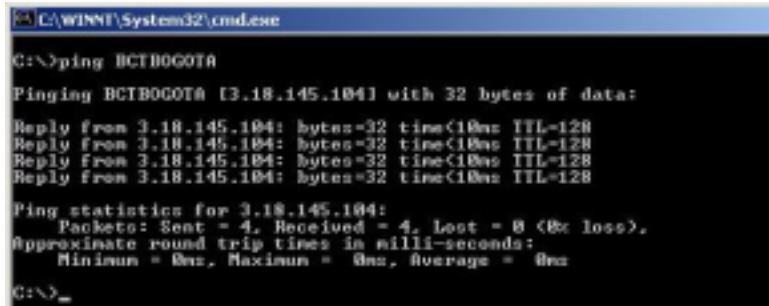
You must be able to reach the computer(s) for both sources.

➤ **To communicate with the First Time License computer by computer name:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

**Result:** A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <servername>` where `servername` is the name of the First Time License computer. Press **Enter**.



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping BCTB0G0TA

Pinging BCTB0G0TA [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms


C:\>_

```

**Figure 7-1. Successful Ping to Server Computer**

**Result:** A successful ping reveals the computer address was reached. Your window should look similar to [Figure 7-1](#). Proceed to install Secure Perfect on the client computer. Refer to [“Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Client Computer”](#) on [page 7.4](#).

OR



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping hct-creed-pass1

Pinging hct-creed-pass1 [3.18.145.157] with 32 bytes of data:

Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.157:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

H:\>

```

**Figure 7-2. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer**

**Result:** If the computer could not be reached, your window will display similar to [Figure 7-2](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup ([“Preparing the Operating System”](#) on [page 3.4](#)) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

**NOTE:** You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved.

## Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Client Computer

**NOTE:** The Secure Perfect application can be successfully installed on a Windows 2000, 2003, or Advanced Server computer as well, if applicable to your system configuration.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
You are here!					

If you purchased this system from GE Security, Secure Perfect 6.0 is installed for you. Skip to ["Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0"](#) on page 9.1.

#### ➤ To install the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:

1. You MUST be logged in as administrator user to the local computer. If not, log out and log back in as a user with administrator permissions. (If you are logging into a domain, log out and log in as an administrator to the domain.)
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) `setup.exe`.
3. When the Secure Perfect Install window displays, click **Install**.

**Result:** A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

### Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .Net Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log in as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.0 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 7.5](#).

### ► When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:

**NOTE:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. During installation, provide the appropriate answers to prompts as they display.
3. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement**.

## Selecting Installation Type

➤ **To select a type of installation:**

1. If you are installing a **Typical** configuration, follow the instructions in [“TYPICAL Installation” on page 7.6](#).
2. If you are installing any of the following, you must choose **Custom**:
  - If you are installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition.
  - If your Secure Perfect Database Server and File Server were installed on one or more separate computers.
  - If you changed the `secure` password.
  - If you installed on a Windows Cluster Server.

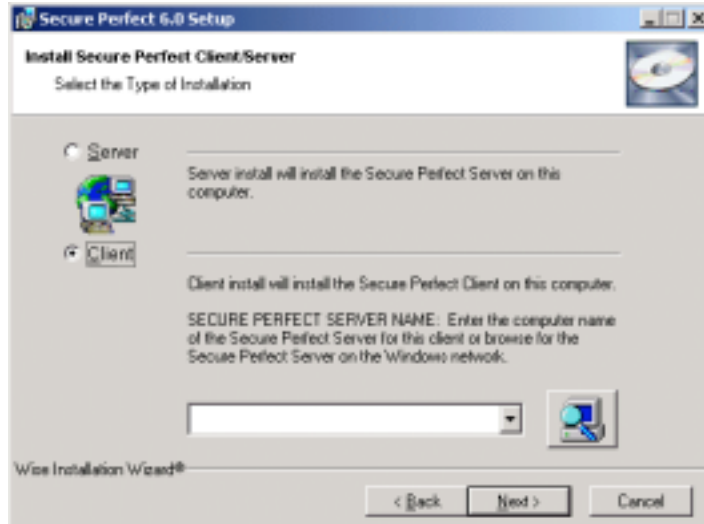
Skip to [“CUSTOM Installation” on page 7.10](#).

## TYPICAL Installation

➤ **If you choose a Typical installation, follow the instructions below:**

1. Select the type of installation as **Typical**. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays as in [Figure 7-3](#).



**Figure 7-3. Select Type of Installation - Typical Client**

2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Client**. The **Secure Perfect Server Name** field is now available. Enter the name of the Secure Perfect Database Server and File Server for this client workstation or **Browse** by clicking the computer icon, for the Server computer name on the Windows network. (This is the Server computer you configured in a previous chapter.)
3. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays, as in [Figure 7-4](#).

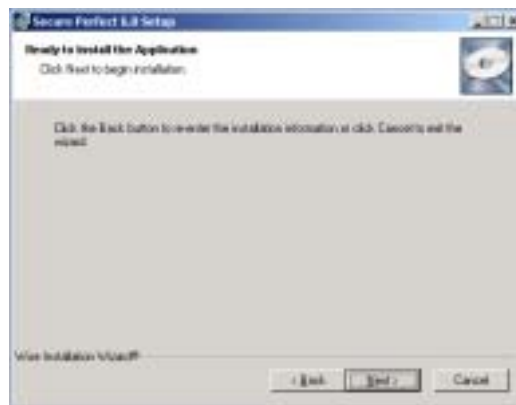


**Figure 7-4. Destination Folder Path**

4. The default program folder is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 7-5](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 7-5. Upgrade - Ready to Install**



5. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

6. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

7. A **License Setup, Welcome** dialog box displays. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The **Secure Perfect Setup** window displays. You are required to license this client installation in order for Secure Perfect to function.

8. Continue with [“Licensing the Client Computer” on page 7.16](#).

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
	You are here!				

## CUSTOM Installation

**Recommended for experienced software installers.**

You must select **Custom** in order to accomplish the following:

- Install Global Edition software.
- Complete the configuration when the **Database Server** and **File Server** are on one or more separate computers.
- Change the secure password.

**NOTE:** If you change the default Secure Perfect user password, all computers must use the identical Secure Perfect replacement user password.

➤ **To select type of installation and continue:**

1. Select the type of installation as **Custom**, as displayed in [Figure 7-6 on page 7.10](#).



**Figure 7-6. Select Installation Type - Custom**

2. Click **Next**.

### GLOBAL Edition Domain Client Computers Only:

**Result:** The **Installing Global Edition** window displays. Select **Yes**, this computer is part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition installation and click **Next**.

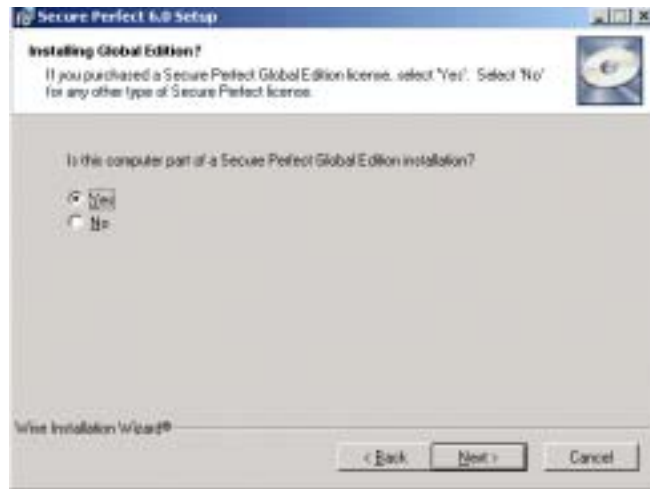
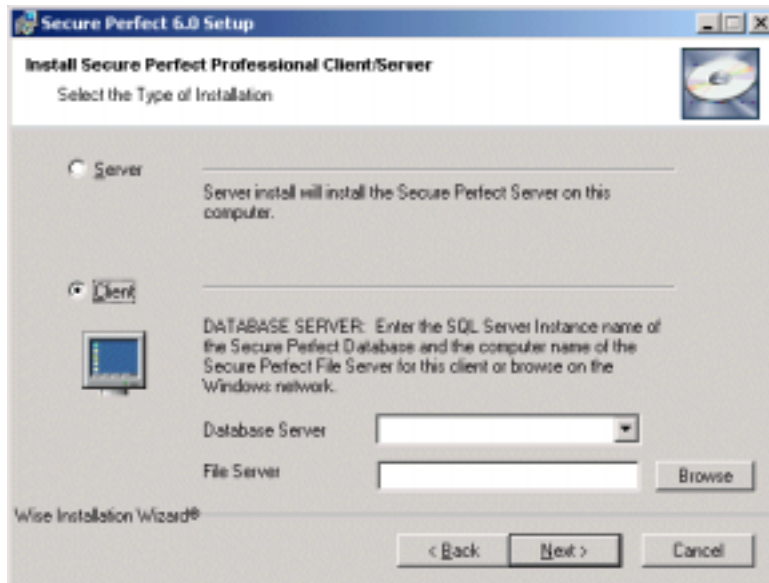


Figure 7-7. Installing Global Edition Election Window

### ALL INSTALLATIONS:

**Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays as in [Figure 7-8](#).



**Figure 7-8. Custom Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Client**

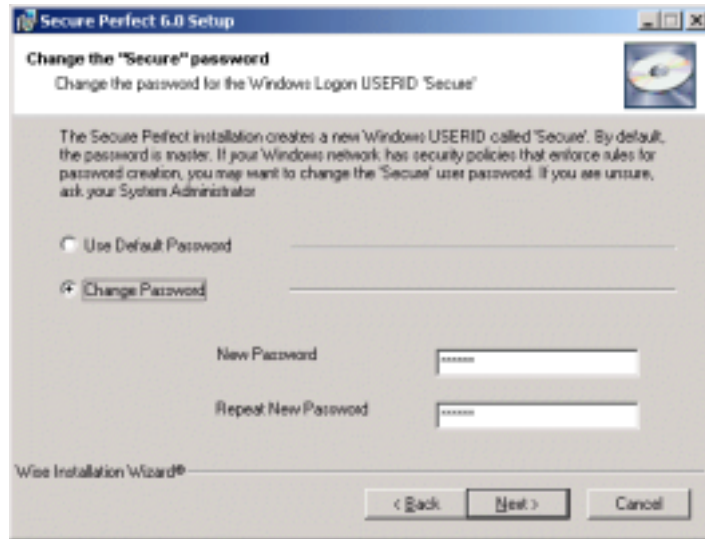
3. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Client**.

**Result:** The **Database Server** field is now available. Enter the name of the Secure Perfect Database Server and SPSQL instance or select from the drop-down list of available Server computers for this client.

**NOTE:** If your system is in a Cluster environment or Global Edition system, the **Database Server** will be a Cluster name and SPSQL instance name combination. Refer to [Figure 5-3 on page 5.11](#).

4. Enter the **File Server** for this client or **Browse** for the **File Server** name on the Windows network. (These are the Server computers you configured in the previous chapters.)
5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-9](#).



**Figure 7-9. Change the Secure Password Window**

6. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

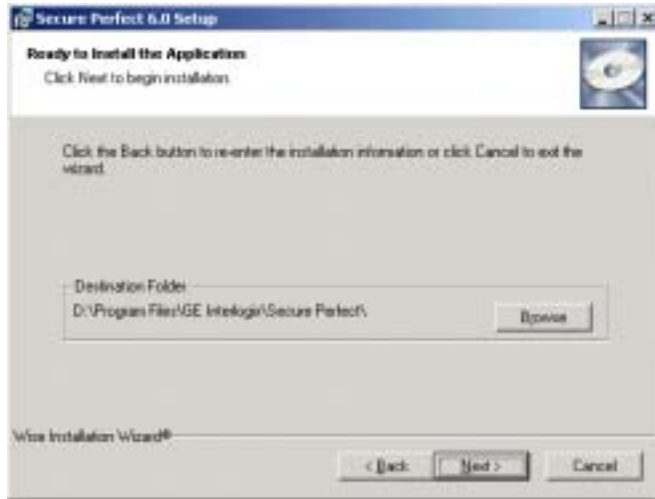
- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password**

Enter your new password and then enter a second time.

**NOTE:** This password must be the same for all computers in the Secure Perfect system.

7. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated, as in [Figure 7-10](#).

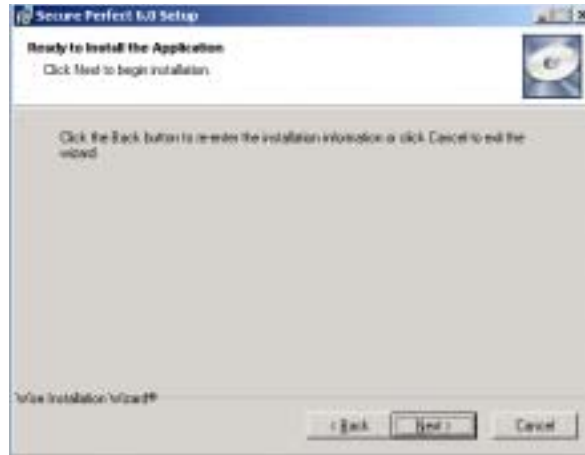


**Figure 7-10. Destination Folder Path**

8. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to another program folder for placement of Secure Perfect files.

## Upgrade Installation

If you are upgrading, the **Ready to Install** window displays similar to [Figure 7-11](#). You do not have a choice of destination folders.



**Figure 7-11. Upgrade - Ready to Install**

9. Click **Next** to continue.

**Result:** Secure Perfect 6.0 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.0 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
11. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
12. Continue with [“Licensing the Client Computer” on page 7.16](#).

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
	You are here!				

## Licensing the Client Computer

1. Typically, you are configuring computers that are running additional Secure Perfect client applications. The reminder to license is placed at this point to maintain the proper sequence in completing the installation. At this time, proceed to [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

*Important!*

2. **REMINDER:** When the licensing sequence is complete, return to this step and continue the installation.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
		You are here!			

## Setting Services to Automatic Startup

**NOTE:** At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.

Now, you will need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.0 services start.

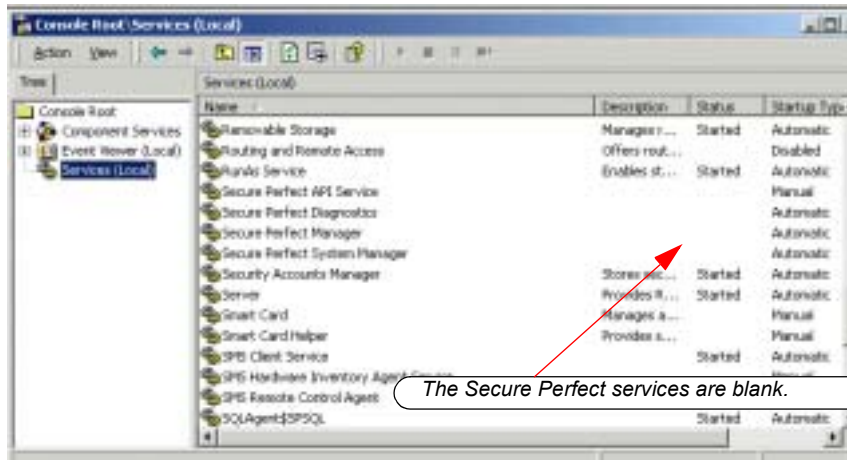
➤ **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Component Services**.

**Result:** The **Component Services** window displays.

2. Expand the services and scroll down.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.





**Figure 7-12. Secure Perfect Component Services**

4. The status will be blank, indicating that the service is not running.
  5. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
  6. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
  7. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
  8. Close all windows and applications.
  9. Restart the Secure Perfect client computer.
- **To set the start of Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service** is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of Application Program Interface to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.0 and have been previously licensed.

- **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
    - Secure Perfect Diagnostic
    - Secure Perfect System Manager
    - Secure Perfect Manager
  2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
  3. Exit the window.

## Global Edition Client Installations

When this additional client is part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition, in order for the new client to be recognized, all currently installed Global Edition Server computers and client computers must be rebooted.

## What's Next?

Proceed to [“Logging In to Client Computer” on page 7.19](#)

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
			You are here!		

## Logging In to Client Computer

**NOTE:** Reboot the client computer at this time if you have not already done so.

During installation of the Secure Perfect 6.0 software, a default local Windows user is created. You will need to log in to the client computer as a user that is part of the SPAdmin local group. By default, a user `secure` with the password `master` was created for you and added to the SPAdmin group.

If the services are started, you are now ready to open the Secure Perfect 6.0 application. Refer to [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 7.16](#) to verify if Secure Perfect Services are started.

➤ **To access Secure Perfect after installation:**

1. To access Secure Perfect from your desktop icon, double-click:



2. As an alternative, access Secure Perfect from the **Start** menu. Click **Start, Programs**, then **Secure Perfect**. The **Secure Perfect** menu displays:



The options are as follows:

- **Diagnostic Viewer**

Refer to [“Diagnostics and Troubleshooting” on page 15.1](#), for details of this option.

- **Secure Perfect**

Refer to [Chapter 9 - Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0](#).

- **SP License**


Refer to [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses”](#) on page [8.9](#).

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
				You are here!	

## Viewing Imaging Status

➤ **To verify whether you currently have Imaging capabilities:**

1. Log in to Secure Perfect. In Secure Perfect, select the **Client Monitor** icon  from the main Secure Perfect toolbar to display the **Client Monitor Form**. The number of Imaging licenses purchased with your system displays in a lower section of the form.

**NOTE:** Keep in mind that Imaging installs on all computers in your Secure Perfect system. Your Secure Perfect 6.0 license controls the number of Imaging stations active at the same time.

2. Select a client computer from the list displayed, then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. Select **Client Form** from the shortcut menu.

**Result:** The **Client Form** opens, displaying the record for the selected client.

4. Select **Imaging Status** as **Enabled** and click **Save**.

**Result:** The photo ID badging system is now enabled for use at this station.

## Windows 2000 Imaging Login Setup

If the operator that is running Secure Perfect 6.0 and Imaging system is not a member of the local Administrator's group, you **MUST** add the Power Users group to this account. The operator login should belong to at least the following local groups:

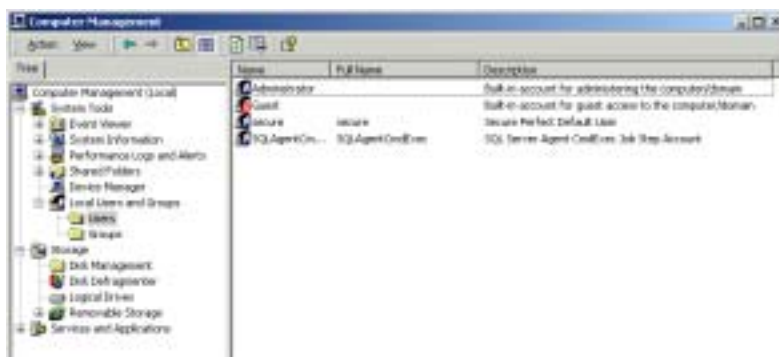
- Users
- Power Users
- SPAdmin

These groups grant the operator access to the Imaging system registry keys and file system.

### ► To add an operator to user groups:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Computer Management**.
2. Select **Local Users and Groups**, then **Users**.

**Result:** Your screen should look similar to [Figure 7-13 on page 7.21](#).

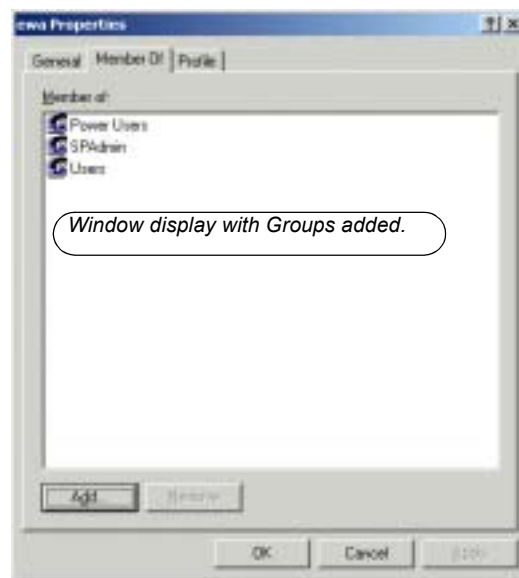


**Figure 7-13. Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Imaging Login Setup**

3. Double-click the user login **Name** to which you are adding access to login groups.

**Result:** The user **Properties** window displays.

4. Select the **Member Of** tab, then click **Add**.
5. When the **Select Groups** window displays, select those groups from the list of **Names** to which you are adding the user login, click **Add**, then click **OK**.



**Figure 7-14. Login Groups - Properties Window**

**Result:** The window should look similar to [Figure 7-14](#). The operator running the Secure Perfect 6.0 and Imaging systems is a member of the groups listed.

## Setting Share Permissions on the Secure Perfect Server if Using a Domain

In order for Imaging clients to save badge designs, capture images, and capture signatures, the Designs, Signature, and Images folders on the Server computer must include share properties for the **SPAdmin** group.

The Secure Perfect installation set up the shares for Design, Signature, and Images folders under a workgroup environment. If the Secure Perfect system is part of an existing domain, the user must add global groups to these shares to allow domain users access to those shares from Secure Perfect client computers. Global groups that need to be added are those to which Secure Perfect operators belong when logging in to the domain. Consult with your IT Department for instructions to perform this action.

## Modifying/Removing Clients

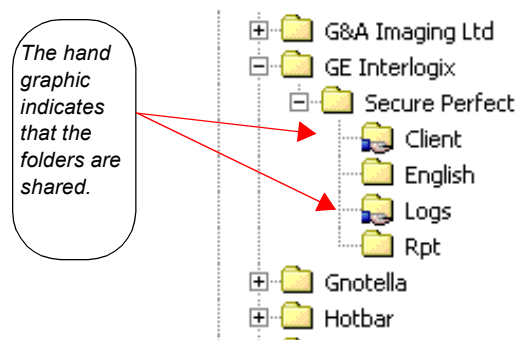
To remove a client from the network, the client must be disconnected. This can be done by either having that client log out or by selecting the **Operations** menu, then **Client Monitor**. On the **Client Monitor Form**, click **Disconnect** on the toolbar, or select **Disconnect** from the shortcut menu. You **MUST** have a permission action of **All**, which is set on the **Permission Form**, in order to disconnect clients.

You can enable or disable the Imaging application on a client without disconnecting. You may have more Imaging stations set up than you have licenses. However, if not all the clients require the license at the same time, you can enable and disable the license for the appropriate clients.

## Client Folder Structure

During installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 software, the following folders are created: Client, English, Graphics, Logs, and Rpt. (If this is a Custom installation, the Graphics folder is on the File Server.)

Some of the folders are shared. This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, as long as they logged in as an authorized user.



**Figure 7-15. Typical Client Folder Structure**

## Client Folders

- To review a description of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, refer to the following:

### Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions.

### English

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.0 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

### Logs

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.0 diagnostic log files.

### Rpt

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.



## What's Next?

You have completed the client computer setup. Now, proceed to configure the client parameters, as listed in [Table 1-4, "Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0,"](#) on page 1.17.

### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Enable Imaging	Finished!
					<i>You are here!</i>

## **NOTES**

## Chapter 8: Licensing the Secure Perfect System

This chapter details procedures to follow when licensing your new Secure Perfect system. Follow instructions in the sequence presented.

**REMINDER:** Keep in mind that you may have to return to a previous section of this Guide to continue the installation sequence following the licensing process.



In this chapter:

[“Licensing Capacities” on page 8.2](#)

[“Licensing Secure Perfect” on page 8.3](#)

[“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 8.13](#)

## Licensing Capacities

Table 8-1: Licensing Capacities

Secure Perfect 6.0 License Types			
Supported Capacities	*Enterprise Edition	*Professional Edition	†eZ Edition Kit
<b>Secure Perfect Server OS</b>	Win2000/Win2003 Standard	Win2000 & WinXP Professional	Win2000 & WinXP Professional
<b>SQL Server 2000 Database</b>	Standard	MSDE	MSDE
<b>Workstations</b>	Server + 25 Clients	Server + 5 Clients	Server + 5 Clients
<b>Micros</b>	256 (PX-2000, Micro/5 Series)	32 (PX-2000, Micro/5 Series)	32 (PX-2000 Series)
<b>Readers</b>	4,096	256	128
<b>Alarm Inputs</b>	20,480	2,560	320
<b>Aux Outputs</b>	16,384	2,048	256
<b>Badges</b>	100,000	25,000	25,000
<b>DVRs</b>	64	16	8
<b>Cameras</b>	1,024	256	128
<b>Cluster Design</b>	Yes	No	No
<b>Client Redundancy</b>	Yes	Yes	No
<b>Visitor: PassagePoint</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Report Commander</b>	Yes	Yes	No

\* Licensing for **Global Edition** is completed at each Region. Refer to the capacity levels for the applicable edition being installed.

† Upgrading an eZ Edition system to a Professional system is a simple process: Purchase and apply for a new license key and then enter the new license key. Refer to [page 8.3](#) and [page 8.6](#).

# Licensing Secure Perfect

## Obtaining the License

You must have a valid GE Security Customer Support Web site login in order to enable the licensing program.

**Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:**

Install SP 6.0	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log In	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

- **To access the GE Security Web site and license your system:**
1. From a Web browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator, enter `www.ge-security.com`.
  2. At the GE Security main window, click the **CASI Business Partner Login** icon.



**Result:** The login box displays as part of the **Access Control & Security Management** window.



CASI Business Partner Login

User Name:

Password:

go

New user [registration](#)

Figure 8-1. CASI Business Partner Login

► If you **ALREADY HAVE** a GE Security Customer Support password:

1. Type your **User Name** and **Password**, and then click **Go**.
2. Select **Software & Key Registration** from the side menu of the window displayed.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Key Generation** from the list of **Registered Products Summary for GE Security**.

**Result:** The **Key Generation** window displays. Complete all fields by typing the requested information based on your setup environment and then click **Create key**.

► If you **DO NOT** have a Customer Support password:

1. Click **New user registration**.

**Result:** The **Business Partner Registration** profile displays.

2. Complete the required fields of the profile.

**NOTE:** Please remember to scroll down and complete all required fields.

3. Click **Submit**.

**Result:** Within 48 hours, you will be notified by e-mail when the sections of the GE Security library to which you are allowed access have been made available to you.

4. Return to the GE Security Web site.

5. At the GE Security main window, click the **CASI Business Partner Login** icon.

**Result:** The login box displays as part of the **Access Control & Security Management** window.

6. Type your **User Name** and **Password**, and then click **Go**.
7. Select **Software & Key Registration** from the side menu of the window displayed.

8. Select **Secure Perfect Key Generation** from the list of **Registered Products Summary for GE Security**.

**Result:** The **Key Generation** window displays. Complete all fields by typing the requested information based on your setup environment and then click **Create key**.

9. We recommend that you store your license agreement number in a safe place, so that if the license key is ever destroyed or corrupted, you can re-install without having to contact GE Security.

**NOTE:** This individual License Key Number can be used three times for this individual Machine Seed Key number. After three times, you will need to contact Customer Support at GE Security for assistance.

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the license key is entered for you.*

10. The Licensing program is used to enter the license key for Secure Perfect 6.0. The license key controls the following:

- Number of client licenses

You can install Secure Perfect on any number of computers. The license controls the number of client computers connected to the Server computer at the same time.

- Number of Photo Imaging licenses

You can install Imaging on any number of computers. The license controls the number of Imaging stations active at the same time.

- Number of Reader licenses
- Number of DVR licenses
- Number of API licenses

- Thin Client licenses
- Expiration date of the license
- Client Redundancy enabling
- Visitor license
- Web Reporting license

A summary of this information can also be viewed by selecting **About Secure Perfect** from the Secure Perfect **Help** menu. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12.](#)

## Entering the License Key

When you have a registered license key, it is time to enter the key in SP License Setup, at the Secure Perfect Application Server computer.

1. If the license program is not already open, select **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP License**.

**Result:** A **Welcome** dialog box displays.

2. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and display the **SP License Setup** window.
3. Continue with the instructions as presented in one of the following scenarios:
  - [“First Time License” on page 8.6.](#)
  - [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 8.8.](#)
  - [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 8.9.](#)
  - [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 8.10.](#)

### First Time License

This scenario assumes that this is the first computer that has the Secure Perfect application installed, and this client is licensing during the Secure Perfect installation sequence:

1. The **First Time License** check box is selected for you. Do not change. If it is not selected, please select it now.



2. The **Machine Seed Key** is displayed for information only and is a read-only field.
3. In the **License Key** sections, enter the 35-character license key string obtained through the GE Security Web site. You can type the entry into the control dialog boxes OR select, copy, and then paste by clicking any **License Key** edit control boxes to paste the entire key.
4. In the **File Server** box:
  - The **Path for license information file located on the File Server** is a read-only dialog box and displays for information only.
  - The **Browse** button is enabled and allows selection of a path for File Server license information, to give the user an opportunity to log in to the remote computer, if the currently logged in user does not have permissions for the folder. When you navigate to and find the Server computer, you must select the **LicenseInfo** folder to display the Server name/folder name combination in this dialog box.
5. Click **Register**.

**Result:** An **SQL Server Login** window displays.

6. Enter the password for the SQL Server 'sa' user and click **OK**.  
**Professional Servers:** The initial password will be `master` and it is set up for you during the installation of MSDE.

**Result:** A message displays informing you that the license setup was successful and Secure Perfect services will be stopped.

7. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The license program exits. The system registers the license key for this client and the Secure Perfect software is licensed for use. This process takes several minutes.

**NOTE:** The computer in your Secure Perfect system that accesses and completes the registration for the first time is the license controller computer. The license key is stored on the File Server computer (see [page 4.15](#)); therefore, the license controller computer AND File Server computer must be online when services are started and the newly licensed client is brought online for the first time.

8. If you do not enter a license key, then Secure Perfect will run in Demo Mode with only limited functionality. Refer to [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 8.8](#).
9. We recommend that you store your license agreement number in a safe place, so that if the license key is ever destroyed or corrupted, you can reinstall without having to contact GE Security.

**NOTE:** A summary of your license displays in the **About Secure Perfect** window of Secure Perfect. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12](#), for additional details.

10. Following the licensing sequence, you **MUST** return to your installation sequence. Unless otherwise instructed, you are ready to set services. Refer to [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 4.65](#).

## Running in Demo Mode

- **If you are licensing your Secure Perfect system for the first time and click Cancel during the licensing configuration:**

When the **License Setup** window displays during the installation sequence, the option to **Cancel** can be selected. Installation of Secure Perfect will complete and operation of your system will continue in **Demo Mode** until you properly license your system. After each hour of login time, the system will shut down and you will be required to restart Secure Perfect to continue operations. This sequence will continue indefinitely if you have not properly licensed your system.

Operation during Demo Mode is limited to the following:

- 1 license controller computer
- 1 additional client computer
- 1 Imaging session
- 4 readers
- 1 digital video recorder
- 1 API connection
- Client Redundancy

## Second and Any Additional Client Licenses

**NOTE: ONLY Windows XP Professional Clients:** If the client is part of a domain, the logon user must be a domain user assigned to the SPAdmin group on the Server, and not logged on locally as administrator. If you are logged on locally as administrator, you will not be able to license successfully because the LicenseInfo folder will not be found.

You **MUST** license all additional clients in order to operate Secure Perfect.

1. Click **OK** on the **License Setup** dialog box, if you have not already done so.
2. The **Machine Seed Key** is displayed for information only and is a read-only field.
- Important!* 3. Ignore the **License Key** section. (This section is disabled and was completed when **First Time License** was completed.)
4. The **Path for license information file located on the File Server:** may have a default path listed. Verify the path or click **Browse** to navigate to the \\<pcname>\LicenseInfo file on the File Server computer. Select and click the file name. It now displays, in the **Path for license information file located on the File Server:**.
5. Click **Register**.  
**Result:** A message displays informing you that the license setup was successful and Secure Perfect services will be stopped.
6. Click **OK**.  
**Result:** The license program exits. The system registers the license key for this client and the Secure Perfect software is licensed for use.
7. Following the licensing sequence, return to your installation sequence.

### NOTES:

- A summary of your license displays in the **About Secure Perfect** window of Secure Perfect. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12](#), for additional details.

- Clients must re-license if the network card has been changed.
- If the license controller computer is re-licensed, ALL clients must be re-licensed.

## If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence

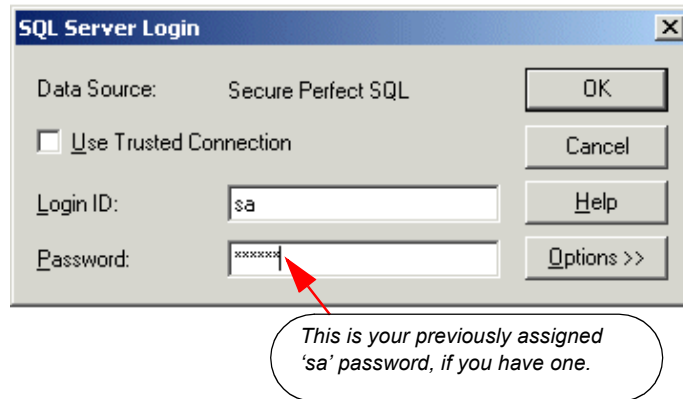
If you do not license during the Secure Perfect installation sequence, installation will complete and operation of your system will continue in Demo Mode until you properly license your system. Refer to [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 8.8](#), for details.

This scenario assumes that this is the first client, and this client is licensing some time AFTER the Secure Perfect installation sequence:

1. Select the check box **First Time License**.
2. Accept and do not change the **License Controller, Machine Seed Key**, as displayed.
3. In the **License Key** sections, enter the 35-character license key string obtained through the GE Security Web site. You can type the entry into the control dialog boxes OR copy, cut, and click any License Key control dialog box to paste the entire key.
4. The **Path for license information file located on the File Server** is a read-only dialog box and displays for information only.
5. The **Browse** button is enabled and allows selection of File Server license information path to give the user an opportunity to log in to the remote computer if the currently logged in user does not have permissions for the folder.

6. Click **Register**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Login** dialog box displays, as in [Figure 8-2](#).



**Figure 8-2. SQL Server Login Dialog Box with Data**

7. Clear the **User Trusted Connection** check box, if checked, and enter **Login ID** as 'sa' and enter sa's **Password**. If you purchased your system from GE Security, a temporary password of `master` was assigned. We recommend that you enter a password of your choice. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The license program exits. The system registers the license key for this client and the Secure Perfect software is licensed for use. A message displays informing you that the license setup was successful and Secure Perfect services will be stopped.

8. Following the licensing sequence:
- You are ready to log in. Refer to [“Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 9.1](#) for login instructions.
  - A summary of your license displays in the **About Secure Perfect** window of Secure Perfect. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 8.12](#), for additional details.

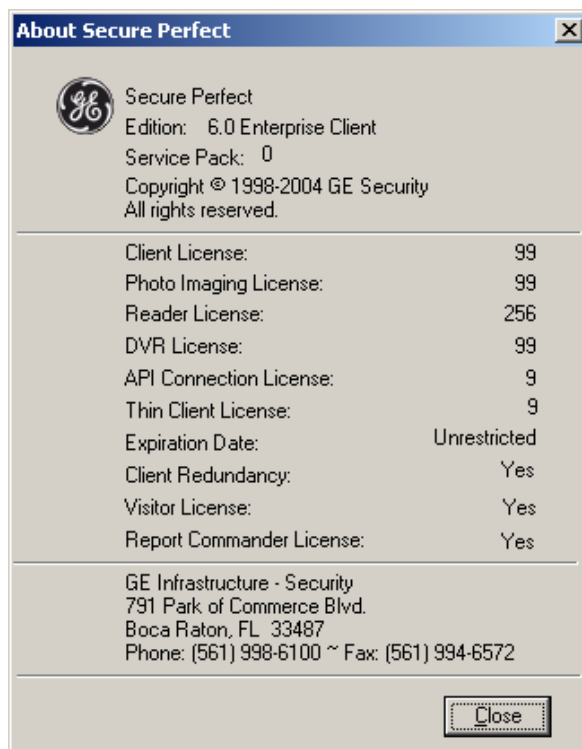
**NOTE:** The computer in your Secure Perfect system that accesses and completes the registration for the first time is the license controller computer. The license key is stored on the license controller computer; therefore, the

license controller computer must be online, with Secure Perfect services running in order to license additional client computers.

9. We recommend that you store your license agreement number in a safe place, so that if the license key is ever destroyed or corrupted, you can reinstall without having to contact GE Security.

## About Secure Perfect: License Summary

Following a successful login, the Edition of Secure Perfect installed on your computer, as well as the Service Pack (if any), and parameters of your system display in the Secure Perfect application, **Help** menu, **About Secure Perfect** window, similar to the following:



**Figure 8-3. Help Menu - About Secure Perfect Window**

## What's Next?

Unless otherwise stated in your installation sequence, continue the installation for your system by selecting one of the following sequences:

- **Server Computers:** [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 4.65](#)

OR

- **Client Computers:** [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 7.16](#)

## **NOTES**



## Chapter 9: Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0

Once you have installed the Secure Perfect 6.0 software, you will need to log in to the Server computer and set a few parameters before beginning to create any micro records or badges. Review [“Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 1.17](#) and “Getting Started” in the Secure Perfect Online Help for a recommended order of initial setup and configuration.



In this chapter:

[“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview” on page 9.2](#)

[“Starting Secure Perfect 6.0 and Logging In” on page 9.5](#)

[“Accessing Help” on page 9.7](#)

[“Adding Yourself as an Operator in Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 9.7](#)

[“Initial Setup of Secure Perfect Records” on page 9.8](#)

[“Setting E-mail Accounts” on page 9.8](#)

[“Changing the Server Computer Name” on page 9.8](#)

## Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview

Windows 2000 computers use special programs called services. A service is a process that can automatically start when the system boots and remain running as a background process independently of anyone being logged in.

All computers running **Secure Perfect 6.0 client** software use three services: **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager**.

- **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** controls the diagnostic information log.
- **Secure Perfect Manager** controls the communication to and from the micros and DVRs.
- **Secure Perfect System Manager** coordinates the communications of data between computers and handles Secure Perfect 6.0 licensing.

These services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or **Secure Perfect 6.0**. In other words, the computer must be turned on but no one needs to be logged in.

These services **MUST** be running in order for connection to the client computers and for micros to communicate with their Server computer.

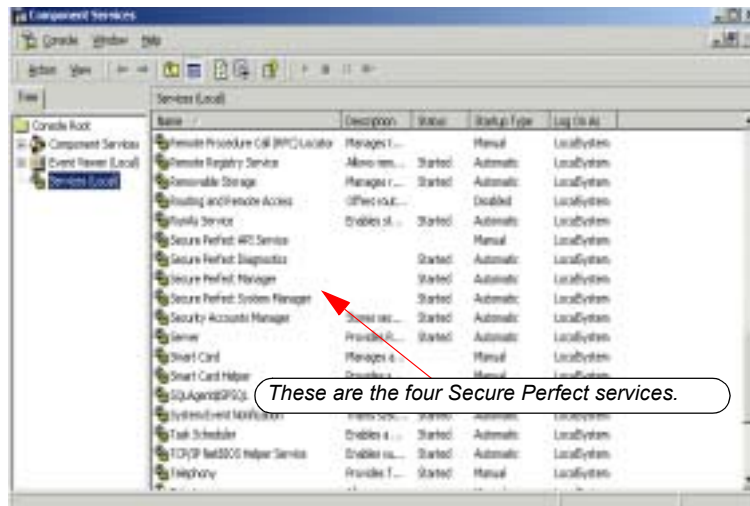
If you are going to be using an API interface, your computer will use a fourth service:

- **Secure Perfect API Service** can be started manually at the time you install an API interface.

➤ **To access the Services form:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** form displays, similar to [Figure 9-1](#).



**Figure 9-1. Secure Perfect Services - Windows 2000**

During your installation sequence, services were set to automatic. Refer to “Setting Services to Automatic Startup” in the section of this Guide that pertains to your system setup. Once set to automatic, Secure Perfect 6.0 initializes these services with an automatic startup which means that it starts as soon as the computer is started. We recommend that you do not change this setting.

The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.



Changing the state of services without a good working knowledge of the services' purpose can cause the computer to act erratically!

Shutting down the service also shuts down any clients currently connected to the server without saving any work in progress!

➤ **To stop the Secure Perfect services:**

1. Shut down all client applications to ensure that any work in progress is saved.
2. Access the **Services** form. See [“To access the Services form:” on page 9.2.](#)
3. Select **Secure Perfect Manager**.

4. Right-click the service and click **Stop**.
  5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for **Secure Perfect System Manager**, and then **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.
- **If you need to stop Services manually, stop in this order:**
1. Secure Perfect Manager
  2. Secure Perfect System Manager
  3. Secure Perfect Diagnostic
- **To start the Secure Perfect services:**
1. Access the **Services** form. See [“To access the Services form:”](#) on page [9.2](#).
  2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.
  3. Right-click the service and click **Start**.
  4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for **Secure Perfect System Manager**, and then **Secure Perfect Manager**.

To verify or troubleshoot the **Secure Perfect** services problems, look at your log files.

- **If you need to start Services manually, start in this order:**
1. Secure Perfect Diagnostic
  2. Secure Perfect System Manager
  3. Secure Perfect Manager
- **To set the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service** is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of Application Program Interface to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.0 and have been previously licensed.

## Starting Secure Perfect 6.0 and Logging In

➤ **To open the Secure Perfect 6.0 client application.**

1. To access Secure Perfect 6.0 from your desktop icon, double-click:



Secure Perfect

2. As an alternative, access Secure Perfect 6.0 from the **Start** menu. Click **Start, Programs**, then **Secure Perfect**. The **Secure Perfect** menu displays. The following options are available:

- **Diagnostic Viewer**

Refer to [“Diagnostics and Troubleshooting” on page 15.1](#) or Online Help, for details of this option.

- **Secure Perfect**

Select and click this option to open the Secure Perfect application.

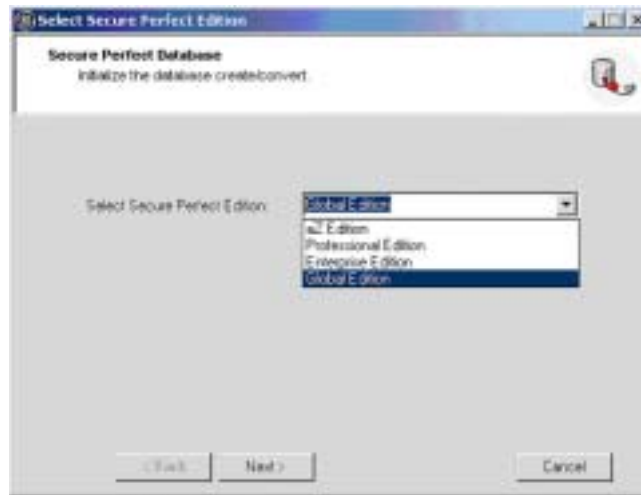
- **SP License**

Refer to the licensing section of this manual for instructions to license your new system.

The following features are available on machines with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed.

- **Create SP Database**

Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence. A window displays, as in [Figure 9-2](#).



**Figure 9-2. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition**

After selecting the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, click **Next** to proceed with creating a database. The database creation process is outlined in the appropriate installation section of this manual for your operating system.

- **SP Maintenance Utility**

This menu option opens the database backup, restore, and password utilities.

- **Install SQL Server 2000 Desktop Edition (MSDE)**

This menu option displays only for Windows 2000 Professional and Windows XP Professional Server systems.

**NOTE:** The Client menu is detailed in [“Logging In to Client Computer” on page 7.19](#).

3. Select **Secure Perfect**.

**Result:** The **Secure Perfect 6.0** program starts. The Secure Perfect 6.0 menu bar displays a **File** and **Help** menu. You will need to log in to access **Secure Perfect 6.0**.

► **To log in to the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

*Default login ID is secure and the password is master. The language is English.*

1. Select the **File** menu and then **Login**.
2. Enter your login ID and password. If this is a client machine, the Server computer must be installed, configured, and licensed. The Secure Perfect 6.0 services must be running on the Server computer.
3. Click **OK**.

**NOTE:** If logging into Secure Perfect 6.0 using a client, you **MUST** have a valid operating system (Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Professional, or Windows XP Professional), user name, and password, along with a valid Secure Perfect 6.0 login ID and password on the Server computer. Those login IDs must be part of the SPAdmin local group on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.

## Accessing Help

To access the Online Help, select **Help Topics** from the Secure Perfect 6.0 **Help** menu.

You do not have to be logged in to access Help.

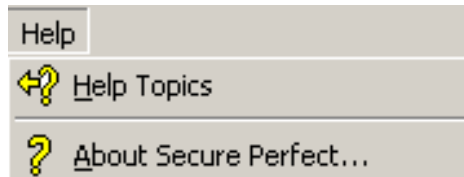


Figure 9-3. Accessing Online Help

## Adding Yourself as an Operator in Secure Perfect 6.0

► **To add yourself as an operator in Secure Perfect 6.0:**

1. When you log in, change the password of the default login ID, secure.

2. Add yourself as an operator in Secure Perfect 6.0. This will allow Secure Perfect 6.0 to track you and the steps you take in setting up the system. To add yourself as an operator, select the **Administration** menu and then **Operator**.

For detailed information about setting up an operator, refer to the **Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide** or the Online Help.

3. Log off and then log in as the new operator.

## Initial Setup of Secure Perfect Records

Refer to the table, [“Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 1.17](#), as a guideline in setting up your system records. The steps follow a specific sequence that is suitable for a smooth system configuration.

## Setting E-mail Accounts

Configuring e-mail accounts can be accomplished by accessing the **Administration** menu, **Alarm Notifier** form. This capability allows you to notify an e-mail account when incoming Secure Perfect alarms are received. Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help for details of this option.

## Changing the Server Computer Name

This section is provided for changes to the computer name, as applicable to your configuration:

- In a Typical installation, to the Database Server computer.
- In a Custom installation that has the Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application installed on the same computer.

For any other scenario, you **MUST** consult GE Security Customer Support for assistance.



Three methods are detailed:

1. In **System Properties**
2. Using the `SPServer.exe` utility
3. **SQL Server Client Tools** (Enterprise-level installations)

Details of each method are included in the following sections.

## 1. Server Computer Name in System Properties

**NOTE:** These instructions assume that you are at the Server computer of a Typical installation. All database and server components and the Secure Perfect application are on the same computer.

If your database and server components and application are on separate and different computers, call GE Security Customer Support for assistance.

- **To change the Server computer name on the Identification Changes tab of your Server computer System Properties:**

**NOTE:** You must be at the Database Server computer.

1. Stop Secure Perfect services.
2. Right-click the **My Computer** icon on your desktop.
3. Select **Properties** from the context menu.
4. Select the **Network Identification** tab from the System Properties.
5. Click **Properties**.

**Result:** The **Identification Changes** screen displays your **Computer Name**. Enter the new name of the Server computer. It should consist of a maximum of 15 alphanumeric characters with no spaces.

6. Click **OK**, then **Apply**. You will be asked to reboot your computer. Select **Yes**.

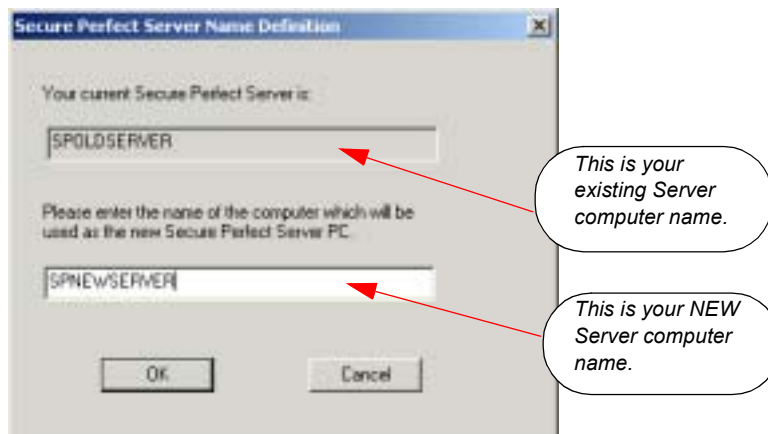
## 2. Server Computer Name Change using SPServer.exe Utility

**NOTE:** These instructions must be followed on every computer in your Secure Perfect system, including the Server computer.

➤ **Secure Perfect 6.0 has a utility to assist you in changing your Server computer name. To change the Server computer name:**

1. Stop Secure Perfect services. If you need assistance, review [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview”](#) on page 9.2.
2. Navigate to the Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect folder of your Server computer.
3. Double-click the SPServer.exe file.

**Result:** The **Secure Perfect Server Name Definition** window displays similar to [Figure 9-4 on page 9.10](#).

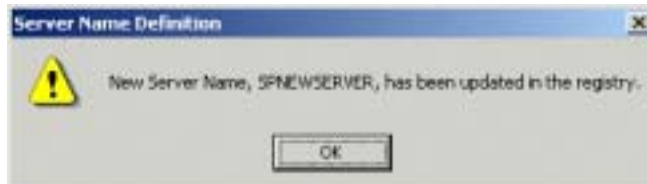


**Figure 9-4. Secure Perfect Server Name Definition Window**

4. Your EXISTING Server computer name displays as a read-only field. Ignore this field.
5. Enter the NEW Server computer name in the appropriate field.

6. Click **OK**.

**Result:** A **Server Name Definition** dialog box displays an update message similar to the following:



**Figure 9-5. Server Name Definition Update Message**

7. Relicense your Secure Perfect system at this time.

If the computer has NOT changed, just the computer name, you can use your existing license key provided at the time you purchased your system.

If the computer has changed, your system needs to be relicensed with a NEW license key. Be prepared to obtain a new license from GE Security. Refer to [“Obtaining the License” on page 8.3](#).

8. Click **OK**.
9. Proceed to change the Server computer name on all clients in your Secure Perfect system, repeating the steps beginning with [“Server Computer Name in System Properties” on page 9.9](#).

### 3. Re-Creating a Microsoft SQL Server Registration

- If you have Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise installed, you may want to reconfigure the SQL Server client tools.

1. Click **Start, Programs, MSSQL Server Enterprise Manager**.
2. Select, then right-click **SQL Server Group**.
3. Select **Delete SQL Server Registration**.
4. Click **OK**.

5. Right-click **SQL Server Group**.
6. Your **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window should look similar to [Figure 9-6 on page 9.12](#).



**Figure 9-6. SQL Server Enterprise Manager**

7. Select **New SQL Server Registration**.

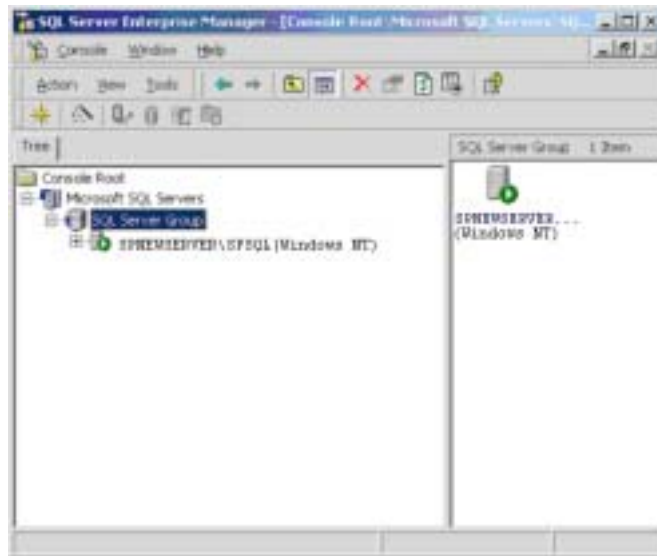
**Result:** A **Registered SQL Server Properties** window displays as in [Figure 9-7 on page 9.13](#).



**Figure 9-7. Registered SQL Server Properties**

8. Click the **Server** drop-down list to display the list of Server names in your Secure Perfect network system. Your newly created Server name should display on this drop-down list. Select your new Server name.
9. Select **Use SQL Server Authentication**.
10. Enter the 'sa' login name and 'sa' password.
11. Do NOT change any other selections.
12. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The new Server name displays under **SQL Server Group** in your SQL Server Enterprise Manager navigation tree similar to [Figure 9-8 on page 9.14](#).



**Figure 9-8. SQL Server Enterprise Manager Navigation Tree**

13. Close the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

## Chapter 10: Logging Out and Shutting Down

This chapter details the process of exiting, logging out, or shutting down Secure Perfect 6.0 and your computer.



In this chapter:

[“Exiting Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 10.2](#)

[“Quitting Windows Server” on page 10.2](#)

[“Shutting Down” on page 10.2](#)

[“Logging Out of Windows” on page 10.3](#)

[“Automatic Client Shutdown” on page 10.3](#)

## Exiting Secure Perfect 6.0

When exiting Secure Perfect 6.0, you have two options:

- **Exit**  
Exit logs out the operator and shuts down the Secure Perfect 6.0 client application.
- **Log Out**  
Log out allows an operator to log out and another operator to log in without exiting the program.

## Quitting Windows Server

You have the option of logging out without shutting down the computer. In this case, the Secure Perfect services are still running. However, you will not receive any alarm notifications. To receive these notifications, you need to have the Secure Perfect 6.0 client application running. If you select the option to receive notifications on the **Client Form**, you need to be logged into the Secure Perfect 6.0 client application. The alarm notification displays based on the operator's facility assignment which is evaluated upon login to the client computer.

## Shutting Down

➤ **To do a total shutdown of Secure Perfect 6.0 and your computer:**

1. Exit the Secure Perfect 6.0 client application by selecting **Exit** from the **File** menu. Enter your password in the **Password** field of the **Exit** window and click **OK**.
2. From the Desktop, click **Start**, then **Shut Down**.
3. From the **Shut Down Windows** form, select the **Shut down** option and click **OK**.



You can cause serious damage to your computer if you do not follow the procedure above. In fact, the resulting damage may require that you reload all the software on your computer.



## Logging Out of Windows

➤ **To log out:**

1. Exit Secure Perfect 6.0 by selecting **Exit** from the **File** menu. Enter your password in the **Password** field of the **Exit** window and click **OK**.
2. From the Desktop, click **Start**, then **Shut Down**.
3. From the **Shut Down Windows** form, select **Log off secure** (where **secure** is the user name that you used to log in.) Click **OK**.

**Result:** This logs off the current user and allows another user to log on. Keep in mind that the Secure Perfect 6.0 services are still running but you will not receive any alarm notifications.

**NOTE:** Also see [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview” on page 9.2](#), for additional information relating to Secure Perfect services.

## Automatic Client Shutdown

➤ **Services will automatically shut down when a client closes the Secure Perfect application and meets all of the following criteria:**

1. Does not host any micros or DVRs.
2. Does not have any API connections.
3. Is not a Thin Client.
4. Is not a backup client for or have any backup clients of its own.
5. Is not a CCTV client.

The shutting down of a particular client computer designates that license capacity unused. Now, that license is available for another computer that can now be designated a Secure Perfect client.

**NOTES**

# Chapter 11: Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server

This chapter provides information for system administrators to archive, back up, and restore the Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise system.



In this chapter:

[“Overview” on page 11.2](#)

[“Enterprise System Recovery Checklist” on page 11.2](#)

[“Backing Up” on page 11.4](#)

[“Restoring” on page 11.10](#)

[“Reclaiming Hard Drive Space” on page 11.19](#)

## Overview

What's the difference between archiving and backing up?

- **Archiving** creates a copy of the latest history transactions. You will still need to back up the archive file in order to maintain a copy. Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help or the *Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide* on CD for details of this function.
- **Backing up** creates a copy of selected data, such as a database or archive, and stores it either on the computer or on another media, such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder.

## Enterprise System Recovery Checklist

If your system or hard drive crashes, your database may be determined to be beyond repair. Follow a sequence of steps to recover your system. See ["Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Recovery" on page 11.3.](#)

## Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Recovery

- **To assist you in recovering your Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise system, refer to this checklist. Complete the steps in the order they are listed here.**
  - ☐ Install Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server operating system. Install applicable operating system service packs. (Refer to [“Preparing the Operating System” on page 2.4.](#))
  - ☐ Install SQL Server 2000. (Refer to [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 2.7.](#))
  - ☐ Install Secure Perfect 6.0 software from the CD. (Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software” on page 4.1.](#))
  - ☐ Using SQL Server Enterprise Manager, restore the three Secure Perfect 6.0 databases from your backup media (SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive). (Refer to appropriate section of this chapter.)
  - ☐ Restore the Images, Signatures, Graphics, and Designs folders from your backup media to the appropriate folders. (Refer to the appropriate section of this chapter.)
  - ☐ If restoring to a different Server computer with a different server name, you will need to run a script to reset the database security. Refer to [“Changing the Server Computer Name” on page 9.8.](#) Follow the steps in the order they are listed.
  - ☐ Run the licensing program, Secure Perfect 6.0 License, and enter your 35-character license key string. (Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1.](#))
  - ☐ Reboot the computer.

Instructions are listed in the sections that follow.

## Backing Up

A backup is a copy of selected data. Since Secure Perfect 6.0 does not contain a backup option, you can use any method you like to back up the data.

You should keep two backups of the Server computer, as follows:

1. Secure Perfect 6.0 data to include the following:
  - **SecurePerfect Database**  
Contains configuration data, such as badges and micros. Your backup will be performed using Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Manager. Refer to [“Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfect Database” on page 11.5.](#)
  - **SecurePerfectArchive Database**  
Contains copies of Secure Perfect 6.0 history data based on archive period. Your backup will be performed using Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Manager. Refer to [“Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive” on page 11.7.](#)
  - **SecurePerfectHistory Database**  
Contains current history including badge transactions and operator history. Your backup will be performed using Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Manager. Refer to [“Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory” on page 11.8.](#)
  - **Images**  
Contains the picture files of badge holders. The Images folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.
  - **Signatures**  
Contains the signature files of badge holders. The signatures folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.
  - **Graphics**  
Will only need to be backed up if you are using Alarm Graphics. Contains the alarm graphics maps. The graphics folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Designs**

Will only need to be backed up if you have Imaging installed. Contains the badge design files. The designs folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

You should back up this data more often since it changes so frequently. While your internal policies may dictate your backup requirements, we recommend that you create a backup at least every week.

2. Entire Secure Perfect 6.0 installation.

The entire Secure Perfect 6.0 folder should be backed up when you first set up the system and have confirmed that it is working, and any time you upgrade. It is very important that you also back up the registry settings. In most backup programs, you will be prompted to back up these settings.

ALWAYS MAINTAIN A CURRENT BACKUP. Should you have any problems with your system, you can always restore your backup. This includes your database as well as your files.

## Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfect Database

The SP 6.0 **SecurePerfect** database contains configuration data, such as badges and micros. It should be backed up on a continual basis since the information may change frequently.

► **Before you back up your SP 6.0 SecurePerfect database:**

1. Verify that you have the correct permission level to access the database. We recommend logging in as Administrator 'sa' or whatever the current Administrator login assigned at installation.

2. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Managers** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL servers**.

3. Navigate to and open the Databases folder. This procedure may take several minutes.

4. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

**Result:** The shortcut menu displays.

**NOTE:** Although there are other methods, we have included the following steps as a guide to assist you in performing one type of backup.

➤ **To back up your SP 6.0 SecurePerfect database:**

1. Click **All tasks**, then **Backup database**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

2. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
3. Select the **Database - complete** option button.
4. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network. The two options are **Tape** or **Disk**.
5. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data. We recommend that you append to the file.
6. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
7. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
8. Click **OK** to start the backup.

**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

9. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.



## Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive

**NOTE:** The SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive database contains copies of Secure Perfect 6.0 history data. It should be backed up on a continual basis since the information will change frequently based on your archive interval set on the Parameters Form. If the database is TOO LARGE, you may have to back up directly to electromagnetic storage tape. A tape can hold 20 to 40 gigabytes of storage.

➤ **Before you begin to back up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Open the Databases folder.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectArchive** to display a shortcut menu.

➤ **To back up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive:**

1. Click **All tasks, then Backup database**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

2. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
3. Select **Database - complete**.
4. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. **If you back up to a file name, you MUST change the name of the file each time you back up or the file will be overwritten.**
5. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
6. You can schedule the backup by clicking the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.

7. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
8. Click **OK** to start the backup.

**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box displays.

9. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.

**NOTE:** The backup may take a long time to complete. As the size of your Secure Perfect 6.0 database increases, the required backup time increases. If the database is TOO LARGE, you may have to back up directly to electromagnetic storage tape. A tape can hold 20 to 40 gigabytes of storage.

## Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory

The Secure Perfect 6.0 history database contains current history including badge transactions, alarm transactions, and operator history. It should be backed up on a continual basis since the information may change frequently.

➤ **Before you begin to back up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Open the Databases folder.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectHistory** to display a shortcut menu.

➤ **To back up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory:**

1. Click **All tasks, then Backup database**.  
**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.
2. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
3. Select **Database - complete**.

4. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network. The available options are **Tape** or **Disk**.
5. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
6. You can schedule the backup by clicking the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
7. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
8. Click **OK** to start the backup.

**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

9. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.

## Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures

Backing up creates a copy of selected data. You can use any backup program you want and any media such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder. The size of the files in the folder you want to back up will be a determining factor of which media to use.

If you purchased your system from GE Security, then your system contains a tape drive. Refer to the section below for details on using this tape drive for backup purposes.

## Backing Up the Secure Perfect Folder

If you purchased your system from GE Security, then your system may contain a tape drive, depending on when the purchase was made. The instructions for using this tape drive are listed below.

➤ **To back up to the tape drive on the Windows 2000 Server computer:**

1. Insert the tape to which you want to back up.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Accessories, System Tool, then Backup.**  
**Result: Welcome to Win2000 Backup and Recovery Tools** will display.
3. Click **Backup Wizard**, then click **Next**.
4. In the **What to Back Up** window, select the appropriate category of items to back up, then click **Next**.
5. Navigate to c:\Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect. Select the folder to back up. Click **Next**.

**Result: The Where to Store the Backup** window displays.

6. Select the **Backup media type** and **Backup media or file name** and click **Next**.

**Result: Completing the Backup Wizard** window displays.

7. Click **Finish**.

## Restoring

**How** you restore depends on how you backed up the system. **What** you should restore is detailed below.

1. Restoring your **SecurePerfectArchive** will happen more frequently than other restores in order to run reports.
2. Restoring your **SecurePerfect** database and **SecurePerfectHistory** should **ONLY** be done if you are having problems with your system.

## Restoring Secure Perfect 6.0 SecurePerfect Database

You should restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfect database backup **ONLY** if you have problems with your **Secure Perfect 6.0** system and all other attempts to correct the system have failed.

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

➤ **Before you restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfect database backup:**

1. Verify that all Secure Perfect 6.0 network clients other than the Server computer have logged out and that the Secure Perfect 6.0 services are shut down.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
3. Open the Databases folder.
4. Select, then right-click **SecurePerfect** to display the shortcut menu.
5. From the drop-down menu, select **Delete**.

**Result:** You will be asked to confirm the delete.

6. Click **Yes**.

➤ **To restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfect database backup:**

**NOTE:** Although there are other ways, our instructions are for one example to perform a restore.

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.

**Result:** The **Restore database** window displays.

2. In the **Restore as database:** field, type **SecurePerfect**.
3. In the **Restore** category, select **From device**.
4. In the **Parameters** section of the window, click **Select Devices**.

**Result:** The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.

5. In the **Restore from** area, select **Disk** and click **Add**.  
**Result:** The **Choose Restore Destination** window displays.
6. Select **File name**, click **Browse**, and navigate to where the backup file is stored. When the path and file name display in the **File name** window, click **OK** in the **Backup Device Location**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Destination** window.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Devices** window. Click **OK** to begin the restore process.  
**Result:** The **Restore Progress** dialog displays.
9. Upon completion, you should receive a message stating that the restore was successful.
10. Click **OK**.

## Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfect Database from Tape

► To restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfect database from tape:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. From **Enterprise Manager**, right-click **Databases, All tasks**, then **Restore database**.
3. Enter **SecurePerfect** or select from the drop-down list
4. At the **Restore:** category, select the **From device** option button.
5. In the **Parameters Devices** area, click **Select Devices**.  
**Result:** The **SQL 2000 Choose Restore Devices** window displays:
6. Select **Tape**, then click **Add**.  
**Result:** The tape drive displays as the default in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box.

7. On the **Restore Database** window, **Parameters** pane, verify that **Restore backup set** and **Database - complete** are selected. Click **OK** three times.

If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click **View Contents**. A list of files will display with the contents of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list.

If restoring to a different Server computer, you will need to run a script to reset the database security. Refer to [“Changing the Server Computer Name” on page 9.8](#). Follow the steps in the order they are listed.

**Result:** An SQL Server Enterprise Manager window will display stating, **Restore of database, ‘Secure Perfect’ completed successfully**. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

## Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive

You may need to restore backups of your archive more frequently in order to run reports on that data.

These restoration procedures are guidelines only. **Additional detailed information is located in the literature received with the SQL Server software and Online Help.**

### ► Before you restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive backup:

1. Verify that all Secure Perfect 6.0 network clients other than the Enterprise Server computer have logged out and that the Secure Perfect 6.0 services are shut down.
2. Back up your current archive. See [“Backing Up SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive” on page 11.7](#).
3. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
4. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
5. Navigate to the **Databases** folder.

6. In the **Databases** folder, right-click **SecurePerfectArchive** to display the shortcut menu.

➤ **To restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive backup:**

1. Select **All tasks**, then **Restore database**.

**Result:** The SQL Server Manager window displays. The **Restore Database** dialog box should be displayed. If not, select it.

2. In the **Restore** area, select the **Database** option.
3. In the **Show backups of database** area, select **SecurePerfectArchive** from the drop-down list.
4. To find the backup file:
  - If the backup file is located on the hard drive, in the **First backup to restore** field, select the backup you would like to restore.
  - If you are not able to locate the desired backup on the drop-down list, select **From Device**, click **Select Devices**, then **Add** and navigate to the backup file.
  - If the backup file is on another computer in your network, create a folder on your computer, then move the file to your Secure Perfect 6.0 computer into the newly created folder.

The one file to be restored should look similar to:

c:\Microsoft SQL Server\BACKUP\SecurePerfect Archive-db-200007140007.BAK

5. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The **Restore Progress** dialog displays.

6. Upon completion, a dialog box displays with a message stating the database was restored successfully.
7. Click **OK**.



## Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive from Tape - SQL 2000

➤ In SQL 2000, to restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfectArchive from tape:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. From **Enterprise Manager**, expand **Microsoft SQL Servers**, then **SQL Server Group**, then your specific server, then the **Databases** folder.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectArchive**. From the shortcut menu, select **All tasks**, then **Restore database**.

**Result:** The **Restore database** screen displays.

4. Select from the drop-down list or type in the name of the database you want to restore.
5. At the **Restore:** area, select the **From device** option button.
6. In the **Parameters Devices** area, click **Select Devices**.

**Result:** The **Choose Restore Devices** screen displays.

7. Select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

**Result:** The tape drive displays as the default option in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box. Verify the accuracy of the tape.

8. Click **OK** three times.

**NOTE:** If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click **View Contents**. A list of files will display with the contents of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list.

**Result:** A **Restore Progress** window will appear.

9. Click **OK**.

**Result:** An **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window will display stating, **Restore of database, 'Secure Perfect Archive' completed**

**successfully.** Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

## Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory

You should restore the Secure Perfect 6.0 history backup **ONLY** if you have problems with your Secure Perfect 6.0 system and all other attempts to correct the system have failed.

**NOTE:** These restore procedures are guidelines only.

➤ **Before you begin to restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory backup:**

1. Perform a backup of your **SecurePerfectHistory** file.
2. Verify that all Secure Perfect 6.0 network clients and the Enterprise Server computer have logged out. Shut down the Secure Perfect 6.0 services on the clients and Server computer.
3. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
4. Open the **Databases** folder. Select, then right-click **SecurePerfectHistory** to display the shortcut menu.
5. From the drop-down menu, select **Delete**.

**Result:** You will be asked to confirm the delete.

6. Click **Yes**.

➤ **To restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory backup:**

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.
2. The **Restore database** window displays.
3. In the **Restore as database:** field, type `SecurePerfectHistory`.
4. In the **Restore** area, select **From device**.

5. In the **Parameters** group box, click **Select Devices**.  
**Result:** The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.
6. In the **Restore from** area, select **Disk** and click **Add**.  
**Result:** The **Choose Restore Destination** window displays.
7. Select **File name**, click **Browse**, and navigate to where the backup file is stored. When the path and file name display in the **File name** window, click **OK** to close the **Backup Device Location** window.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Destination** window.
9. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
10. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Devices** window. Click **OK** to begin the restore process.  
**Result:** The **Restore Progress** dialog displays.
11. Upon completion, you should receive a message stating **Restore of database 'SecurePerfectHistory' completed successfully**.
12. Click **OK**.

## Restoring SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory from Tape

- To restore the SP 6.0 SecurePerfectHistory from tape:
  1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
  2. From **Enterprise Manager**, right-click **Databases, All tasks, then Restore database**.  
**Result:** The **SQL 2000 Restore Database** window displays.
  3. Select or type in the name of the database you want to restore.

4. At the **Restore:** category, select the **From device** option button.
5. In the **Parameters Devices** area, click **Select Devices**.
6. Select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

**Result:** The tape drive displays as the default option in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box. Verify that it is the appropriate tape.

7. Click **OK** three times.

**NOTE:** If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click "View Contents." An additional screen displays, listing the file content of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list, then click OK.

**Result:** An SQL **Server Enterprise Manager** window will display stating, **Restore of database, 'Secure Perfect Archive' completed successfully**. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

## Restoring the Secure Perfect Folder

If you purchased your system from GE Security, then your system may have a tape drive. The instructions for using this tape drive are listed below.

➤ **To restore from the tape drive on the Server computer:**

1. Insert the tape you want to restore.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Accessories, System Tools**, then **Backup**.

**Result:** **Welcome to the Win2000 Backup and Recovery Tools** window displays.

3. Click **Restore Wizard**.

**Result:** The **Restore Wizard** window displays.

4. Click **Next**.

5. In the **What to Restore** window, select the files to restore, then click **Next**. If you are unsure of files in the Secure Perfect 6.0 folder, the files are listed in [“Server Folder Structure” on page 4.67](#).
6. When prompted, click **Finish**.

## Reclaiming Hard Drive Space

In time, you will notice that the database continues to use more and more hard drive space. Some of this space can be reclaimed by shrinking the database.

At times, the amount of space reclaimed may be small; sometimes, the results may be quite dramatic. The results will vary depending on your setup and the amount of activity of your system.

### Shrinking the Database

➤ **To set the database to shrink:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. In the **Enterprise Manager**, expand the **Databases** folder and click to select the database you want to shrink: **SecurePerfect**, **SecurePerfectHistory**, or **SecurePerfectArchive**.
3. Right-click the selected database file. From the shortcut menu, select **All Tasks**, then **Shrink Database**.
4. Leave the defaults and click **OK**. You may want to set up a schedule by selecting the **Schedule** check box. If you set up a schedule, make sure there are no conflicts.
5. Leave the default settings and click **OK**.

**Result:** The process of shrinking the database may take an extended period of time, depending on the size of the database. The **Enterprise Manager** may stop responding. That is not a problem. Your system and database operations will continue normally.

## Other Maintenance Options

### SQL Server 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard

At this point you might want to run the **SQL 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard** to set up scheduled maintenance operations for the three databases. The following settings are suggested for the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive and master databases.

**NOTE:** Refer to Microsoft SQL Server Online Help and books for details to set up a maintenance plan. The following are general guidelines only.

➤ **Before you begin the SQL 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Navigate to the database on which you want to run maintenance, select, then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. Select **All Tasks**, then **Maintenance Plan**.

➤ **To run the SQL 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. When the **Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays, select the **Reorganize Data and Index Pages** check box. Then select **Change free Space Per Page Percentage to**. You may leave the default setting of 10, although you may need to increase it in the future.
2. Select **Remove Unused space from Database Files** check box. You may accept the defaults, but as the database grows you may need to change these.
3. Set your backup schedule by clicking **Change**.
4. Click **OK**, then **Next**.
5. Select **Check Database integrity**, then **Attempt to repair any minor problems**. (The default selection is **Exclude indexes**.) Then select **Perform These Checks Before doing the Backups**.

**NOTE:** The plan can be scheduled but remember to check if the plan conflicts with any other job you have set up.

6. Click **Next**.
7. Continue to answer the prompts in the windows of the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** according to your backup location, media and strategy. When you have completed the selections on the final window, click **Finish**.

### ***Clear TempDB log and Shrink Archive***

There are two database maintenance jobs associated with Secure Perfect 6.0.

1. The **Clear TempDB log** job empties the `TEMPDB log` file. `TEMPDB log` needs to empty because the `badgehistory` and `alarmhistory` report process creates large temporary tables that consume excessive amounts of hard drive space. This job runs every six hours beginning at 12:00 A.M.
2. The **Shrink Archive** job empties the `SecurePerfectArchive log`. This is done to control the size of the `SecurePerfectArchive` database.

#### **► To adjust or modify an existing job schedule:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Expand the **Servers** folder to locate and expand your server folder.
3. Select **Management, SQL Server Agent, then Jobs**.

**Result:** A list of jobs displays.

4. Right-click the job you want to modify and select **Properties** on the shortcut menu.

**Result:** The **New Job Schedule** window displays.

5. Select the **Schedules** tab and click **New Schedule**.
6. Rename, then set options.
7. Click **OK**.

**NOTES**



## Chapter 12: Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server

This chapter provides information for system administrators to archive, back up, and restore an Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional system.



In this chapter:

[“Overview” on page 12.2](#)

[“Professional System Recovery Checklist” on page 12.2](#)

[“Backing Up” on page 12.3](#)

[“Restoring” on page 12.7](#)

## Overview

- **To define the difference between archiving and backing up:**
  - **Archiving** creates a copy of the latest history transactions. You will still need to back up the archive file in order to maintain a copy. Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help or the *Secure Perfect 6.0 Administrator's Guide* on CD for details of this function.
  - **Backing up** creates a copy of selected data, such as the three databases, and stores it either on the computer or other media, such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder.

## Professional System Recovery Checklist

If your system or hard drive crashes, your database may be determined to be beyond repair. Follow a sequence of steps to recover your system. See [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Recovery” on page 12.3.](#)

## Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Recovery

- To assist you in recovering your Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional system, refer to this checklist. Complete the steps in the order they are listed here.
  - ☐ Install Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system. Install applicable operating system service packs. (Refer to [“Preparing the Operating System” on page 3.4.](#))
  - ☐ Install Secure Perfect 6.0 software from the CD. (Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software” on page 4.1.](#))
  - ☐ Restore the three Secure Perfect 6.0 databases from your backup media (SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive). (Refer to appropriate section of this chapter.)
  - ☐ Restore the Images, Signatures, Graphics, and Designs folders from your backup media to the appropriate folders. (Refer to the appropriate section of this chapter.)
  - ☐ If restoring to a different Server computer with a different server name, you will need to run a script to reset the database security. (Refer to [“Changing the Server Computer Name” on page 9.8.](#) Follow the steps in the order they are listed.)
  - ☐ Run the licensing program, Secure Perfect 6.0 License, and enter your 35-character license key string. (Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 8.1.](#))
  - ☐ Reboot the computer.

Instructions are listed in the sections that follow.

## Backing Up

A backup is a copy of selected data. You should keep two backups of the Server computer:

1. Secure Perfect 6.0 data to include the following:
  - **SecurePerfect Database**

Contains configuration data, such as badges and micros.

- **SecurePerfectHistory Database**

Contains current history including badge transactions and operator history.

- **SecurePerfectArchive Database**

Contains copies of Secure Perfect 6.0 history data based on archive period.

- **Designs**

Contains the badge design files. The Design folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Images**

Contains the picture files of badge holders. The Images folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Signatures**

Will only need to be backed up if you have Imaging installed. Contains the signature files of badge holders. The Signatures folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Graphics**

Will only need to be backed up if you are using Alarm Graphics. Contains the alarm graphics maps. The graphics folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

You should back up this data more often since it changes so frequently. While your internal policies may dictate your backup requirements, we recommend that you create a backup at least every week.

2. Entire Secure Perfect 6.0 installation.

The entire Secure Perfect 6.0 folder should be backed up when you first set up the system and have confirmed that it is working, and any time you upgrade. It is very important that you also back up the registry settings. In most backup programs, you will be prompted to back up these settings.

ALWAYS MAINTAIN A CURRENT BACKUP. If you have any problems with your system, you are able to restore your backup. This includes your databases as well as your files.

## Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases

The Secure Perfect 6.0 databases contains configuration data, such as badges and micros. They should be backed up on a continual basis since the information may change frequently.

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect databases:**

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after restoring the database files.

1. Create a folder on your system where the backup files will be stored.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: `Maintenance.exe`

**Result:** A **Maintenance** window displays.

3. Click **Backup**.

**Result:** A **Maintenance - [Backup]** destination window displays.

4. Accept the default **Login** of 'sa' and enter the **Password** for sa. The default password assigned for the 'sa' user was `master`.
5. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files will be stored. Double-click to open the **Destination** folder.
6. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop the destination folder onto each of the fields:

- SecurePerfect
- SecurePerfectArchive
- SecurePerfectHistory

**Result:** The .BAK files in each field will be automatically named, to include the directory path, file name, date, and time.

7. If you choose not to back up any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is selected but no destination is entered in the database field, backup of that database file will not occur.
8. Click **Backup**.

**Result:** The backup process begins. When backup is complete, a dialog box displays a message verifying the successful backup of the chosen databases.

9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the **Maintenance** window.

## Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures

1. Backing up creates a copy of selected data. You can use any backup program you want and any media such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder. The size of the files in the folder you want to back up will be a determining factor of which media to use.
2. If you purchased your system from GE Security, then your system contains a CD-RW drive acceptable for backup purposes.
3. In Microsoft Explorer, navigate to the Secure Perfect program folder. Select the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures folders.
4. Copy the folders to your backup media.

## Backing Up the Secure Perfect Folder

1. If you purchased your system from GE Security, then your system contains a CD-RW drive acceptable for backup purposes. It is recommended that you do a backup of the entire Secure Perfect folder.
2. In Microsoft Windows Explorer, navigate to the Secure Perfect program folder.
3. Copy the Secure Perfect folder to your backup media.

## Restoring

How you restore depends on how you backed up the system. What you should restore is detailed below.

1. Restoring your **SecurePerfectArchive** will happen more frequently than other restores in order to run reports.
2. Restoring your **SecurePerfect** database and SecurePerfectHistory should ONLY be done if you are having problems with your system.

## Restoring Databases on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

### ➤ To restore a database backup:

1. Verify that Secure Perfect 6.0 is installed on the destination computer.
2. Stop Secure Perfect 6.0 services.
3. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

**NOTE:** If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: `Maintenance.exe`

**Result:** A **Maintenance** window displays.

4. Click **Restore**.

**Result:** A **Maintenance - [Restore]** destination window displays.

5. Accept the default **Login** of 'sa'. Enter the 'sa' password, if applicable. The default password assigned to the sa user is 'master.'

**NOTE:** Although you cannot change the password here, GE Security recommends assigning a unique SQL system administrator password to your database using the SP Maintenance Utility.

6. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files are presently stored. Double-click to open the folder.
7. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop from the **Backup Source File** window onto each of the fields:
  - SecurePerfect
  - SecurePerfectArchive
  - SecurePerfectHistory
8. If you choose not to restore any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is checked, but no destination is entered, the restoration will not occur.
9. Click **Restore**.

**Result:** The restoration process begins. When restoration is complete, a dialog box displays a message, verifying the restoration of the chosen databases.

10. Click **OK**.
11. Exit **Restore**. The database restoration is complete.
12. Start Secure Perfect services.



## **Restoring Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures**

- **To restore the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures folders to the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer:**
  1. Copy the designs from the backup source into the Designs folder on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.
  2. Copy the graphics from the backup source into the Graphics folder on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.
  3. Copy the images from the backup source into the Images folder on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.
  4. Copy the signatures from the backup source into the Signatures folder on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.

## **NOTES**

# Chapter 13: Uninstalling Secure Perfect or Deleting a Database

This chapter outlines instructions for removal of software and deleting a database.



In this chapter:

[“Uninstalling Secure Perfect 6.0 Software” on page 13.2](#)

[“Deleting the Database” on page 13.7](#)

[“Removing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition” on page 13.8](#)

[“Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine \(MSDE\) - Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional” on page 13.9](#)

# Uninstalling Secure Perfect 6.0 Software

## Before You Begin

Before you uninstall Secure Perfect, make sure that:

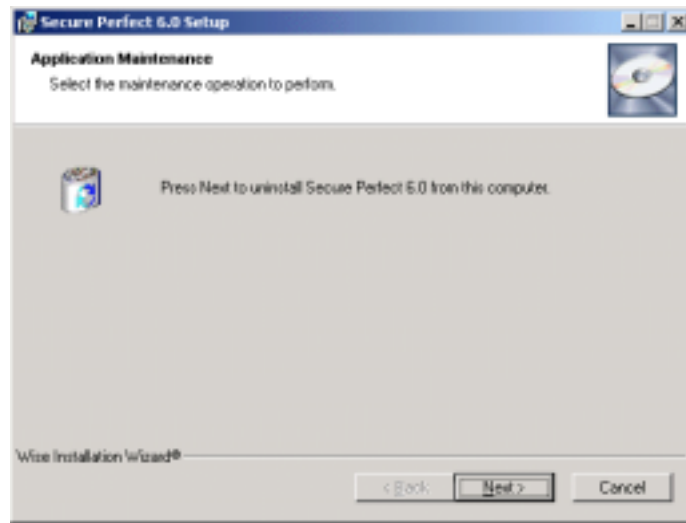
- All clients are logged off.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.
- All Secure Perfect services are stopped. (Secure Perfect Manager, Secure Perfect System Manager, and Secure Perfect Diagnostics). Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview” on page 9.2](#).

## Uninstalling

### ► To uninstall Secure Perfect 6.0:

1. Log in as someone with administrative privileges other than `secure`, such as `administrator`.
2. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Program**.
3. From the list of currently installed programs that display, select **Secure Perfect**.
4. Click **Change**. The **Remove** button is unavailable.

**Result:** The **Application Maintenance** window displays as in [Figure 13-1](#).



**Figure 13-1. Application Maintenance - Uninstall Secure Perfect**

5. Click **Next**.

**Result:** An addition uninstall window displays.

6. Click **Next**.

7. Uninstall begins and a status bar indicates the uninstall progress. Once the uninstall begins, the **Cancel** button is unavailable.

8. When uninstall is complete, click **Finish**, then exit the **Add/Remove Programs** window and the **Control Panel**.

The database and log files are NOT removed during the uninstall of Secure Perfect 6.0 on the Server computer.

➤ **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), do the following:**

1. Press Ctrl-Alt-Delete.

**Result:** The Windows **Security Dialog** displays.

2. Click **Task Manager**.

3. At the **Task Manager** window, **Perform Uninstall** will display a status of **Not Responding**.
4. Select the line **Perform Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
5. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.

## Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall

You may encounter problems while uninstalling from a Server computer. Sometimes, this results in an incomplete uninstall which means miscellaneous files are left behind. If you did encounter problems, the sections that follow detail some troubleshooting steps to assist you in troubleshooting your uninstall. The first step is to verify that Secure Perfect uninstalled cleanly. Refer to [“Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly” on page 13.4](#).

### Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly

Check the Secure Perfect folder and verify that the Database and Logs folders are the only items left.

➤ **To verify a Secure Perfect uninstall:**

1. Go to Windows Explorer and navigate to your Secure Perfect folder.
2. You should see the Database and Logs folders only. If you see any other files, select them and click **Delete**.
3. Next, continue with [“Deleting Subkeys from the Registry” on page 13.4](#).

### Deleting Subkeys from the Registry



Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require you to re-install your operating system. Neither GE Security nor Microsoft guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk!

➤ **To delete the GE Interlogix subkey from the registry:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.

2. At the **Run** window, enter: `regedit`
3. Click **OK**.
4. Locate the **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE** key.
5. Double-click the **SOFTWARE** icon to expand the folder tree.
6. If you have a **GE Interlogix** key, select in the Registry, and click **Delete**.
  - If you have a problem deleting the GE Interlogix key, you may need to change the registry permission. Refer to [“If you have a GE Interlogix key and need to change permission for the registry:” on page 13.5](#).
  - If you do not have a GE Interlogix key, this is an indication that the deletion proceeded well. Continue with step 8.

**Result:** You will be asked to confirm the deletion.

7. Click **Yes**.
8. From the main menu, select **Registry**, then **Exit**.
9. Reboot your computer at this time.



Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require you to re-install your operating system. Neither GE Security nor Microsoft guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk!

➤ **If you have a GE Interlogix key and need to change permission for the registry:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. At the **Run** window, enter: `regedt32`
3. Click **OK**.
4. Locate the **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE** key.
5. Double-click the **SOFTWARE** icon to expand the folder tree.

6. Select **GE Interlogix**.

**NOTE:** If GE Interlogix is not there, do not proceed. Check with your Information Systems Department.

### **Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation**

7. From the main menu, select **Security**, then **Permissions**.
8. Click **Add**.
9. At the **Select Users or Groups** window, locate and select **SPAdmin**.
10. Click **Add**.
11. Click **OK**.
12. Select the **Allow inheritable permissions from parent to propagate to this object** check box.
13. In the **Permissions** portion of the **Security** window, select **Allow** for full control. Click **Apply**, then click **OK**.
14. Click **OK**.
15. From the main menu, select **Registry**, then **Exit**.



## Deleting the Database



The following steps cannot be done if you have already uninstalled Microsoft SQL Server or Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) software.

### Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Server

As we have mentioned earlier, the database is NOT removed when you uninstall Secure Perfect from the Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Server computer.



Make a backup of your database BEFORE performing these steps!

➤ **To delete the database from the Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Server:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Locate and open the Databases folder. This may take a few minutes.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectHistory** to display the shortcut menu.
4. At the menu, select **Delete**.
5. Right-click **SecurePerfectArchive** to display the shortcut menu.
6. Select **Delete**.
7. Right-click **SecurePerfect** to display the shortcut menu.
8. Select **Delete**.
9. From the SQL Server Enterprise Manager main menu, select **Console**, then **Exit**.

## Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Server



Make a backup of your database BEFORE performing these steps!

➤ **To delete the database from the Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional Server computer:**

1. Select the **Tools** menu, **Database Utilities**, **Drop SQL Database** feature of Microsoft Access 2002, if installed. Refer to Microsoft Access 2002 Online Help for additional information.

OR

1. Uninstall Microsoft Desktop Engine (MSDE). Refer to [“Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine \(MSDE\) - Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional”](#) on page 13.9.
2. In Windows Explorer, delete all files from the **Secure Perfect/Database** folder.

## Removing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition



Removing Microsoft SQL Server will delete all Secure Perfect databases.

➤ **If you are required to remove Microsoft SQL Server software due to file corruption beyond recovery, you will need to perform the following:**

1. Stop SQL Server services. Refer to [“Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Service Manager”](#) on page 2.13.
2. Stop any applications that are currently using SQL Server software.
3. Back up your database files. See [“Overview”](#) on page 11.2.

➤ **To uninstall Microsoft SQL Server software:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Settings**, **Control Panel**, and then **Add/Remove Programs**.

2. On the **Add/Remove Program Properties** page, select **Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (SPSQL)**.
3. Click **Change/remove**.
4. You will receive a **Confirm File Deletion** popup window asking: **Do you want to completely remove the selected application and all of its components?** Click **OK**.
5. You are returned to the **Add/Remove Programs** screen. Your system reboots at this time.
6. Log in and start Windows Explorer. Navigate to the Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server folder, select, and delete. If it exists, select the MSSQL\$SPSQL folder and delete.
7. Exit Windows Explorer and click **Start**, then **Run**. At the **Run** window, enter `regedit` and click **OK**.
8. In the **Registry Editor** window, locate and expand the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft` key.
9. Locate, select, and delete the following keys:  
  
Microsoft SQL Server  
MSSQLServer
10. Exit **Registry Editor**.
11. Reboot the Server computer.

## Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) - Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional

**NOTE:** Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) does not delete Secure Perfect 6.0 databases; however, the database files are not accessible because the engine to access and control the database will be removed.

➤ **Before you remove MSDE:**

1. Stop any applications that are currently using SQL Server software.
2. Back up your database files using the **Maintenance** utility on the Secure Perfect **Run** menu.

**NOTE:** (Secure Perfect 6.0 Professional databases will need to be restored after the re-install of MSDE.)

➤ **To remove Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) software:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
2. Select **Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine (SPSQL)** from the **Currently Installed Programs** list, verify that you want to delete, and click **Remove**.
3. A progress bar displays during the uninstall.
4. When the uninstall process completes, exit the Control Panel and start Windows Explorer. Navigate to your hard drive, typically, C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server folder, select, and delete. If it exists, select the Microsoft SQL ServerMSSQL\$SPSQL folder and delete.
5. Exit Windows Explorer and click **Start**, then **Run**. At the **Run** window, enter `regedit` and click **OK**.

**Result:** Registry Editor opens.



Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require you to re-install your operating system. Neither GE Security nor Microsoft guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk!

6. In the **Registry Editor** window, locate and expand the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft` key.

7. Locate, select, and delete the following keys:  
Microsoft SQL Server  
MSSQLServer
8. Exit **Registry Editor**.
9. Reboot the Server computer.

## **NOTES**

# Chapter 14: Upgrading Your 5.0 System to Secure Perfect 6.0

This chapter outlines the steps to convert your database and upgrade your Version 5.0 system to Secure Perfect 6.0.



In this chapter:

[“Upgrading Versions Prior to Secure Perfect 5.0” on page 14.2](#)

[“Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - ENTERPRISE SERVERS ONLY” on page 14.2](#)

[“Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - PROFESSIONAL SERVERS ONLY” on page 14.28](#)

[“Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - CUSTOM SPLIT INSTALLATION” on page 14.48](#)

[“Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT” on page 14.59](#)

[“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#)

[“Configuration Notes - Ensuring Success” on page 14.73](#)

## Upgrading Versions Prior to Secure Perfect 5.0

**NOTE:** Upgrading from previous versions earlier than Secure Perfect 5.0 is NOT covered in this manual.

- If you are upgrading from Secure Perfect versions earlier than Version 3.1, GE Security does not provide you with the media. For a nominal fee, GE Security provides a service for converting these earlier versions.
- If you are upgrading from versions 3.1 or 4.0, you will require a copy of *Secure Perfect Upgrades: Versions 3.1 and 4.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0* to complete your upgrade process. This document is provided on your *Secure Perfect Documentation CD*.

## Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - ENTERPRISE SERVERS ONLY

The Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Server computer runs on Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard operating system. Client computers run on Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server operating systems.

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

You may follow one of two scenarios when converting to SP 6.0:

**NOTE:** If your SP 6.0 Server computer will be the same computer as your existing Secure Perfect system, refer to Scenario 1. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.0 Server computer.

**Scenario 1:** The existing SP 5.0 computer will become the SP 6.0 Server computer.

**Scenario 1 begins on [page 14.3](#).**



**NOTE:** If you plan on using a new or different computer for your SP 6.0 Server, refer to Scenario 2. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.0 Server computer.

**Scenario 2:** The SP 6.0 Server computer will be a different computer than the existing SP 5.0 computer.

**Scenario 2 begins on page [page 14.13](#).**

## Scenario 1 - Same Computer

If your SP 6.0 Enterprise Server computer will be the same computer as your existing SP 5.0 system, then follow the instructions in this section.

➤ **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using the same computer:**

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 14.4\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server \(page 14.4\)](#)
3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 14.5\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 14.6\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 14.7\)](#)
6. [Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases \(page 14.9\)](#)
7. [Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System \(page 14.9\)](#)
8. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.10\)](#)
9. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 14.10\)](#)
10. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 14.12\)](#)
11. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 14.12\)](#)

## Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

## 1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the exact case used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

## 2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 5.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 5.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

### ➤ To stop services on the 5.0 Server computer and all clients:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
  - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.
- Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.
4. If the **Secure Perfect API** service is running, stop that service now.
  5. Exit the **Services** application.

### 3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 5.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility or Microsoft Enterprise Manager. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, and signatures will need to be restored after SP 6.0 is installed.

## 4. Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 5.0 Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.0 Server computer.

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with 5. “[OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard](#)” on page 14.7.

### ➤ To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers**.

2. Navigate to and open the **Databases** folder. This procedure may take several minutes.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect Shortcut** menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks**, then **Backup Database**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.

6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.
7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.
8. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
9. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.  
**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.
11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** screen displays, click **OK**.
12. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.
13. Exit the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

## 5. OPTIONAL: Run *Database Maintenance Plan Wizard*

On your SP 5.0 Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

### ► To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.

3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.  
**Result:** The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.
13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** screen. Click **Next**.
17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** screen. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** screen displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.

## 6. Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases

If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the cleaned database files would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. [“Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 14.6.

## 7. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System

➤ **To install the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#), [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#), or [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition](#) depending on your installation. Some items to note:
  - If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
  - Secure Perfect 5.0 is automatically uninstalled. (See steps below.)
  - The ‘Create SP Database’ utility automatically launches.
  - The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

➤ **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Ctrl-Alt-Delete**.
2. The **Windows Security** dialog displays.
3. Click **Task Manager**.
4. At the **Task Manager** window, **Install** will display a status of **Not Responding**.

5. Select the line **Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
6. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.
7. Once the steps above are completed, follow the instructions in the sections of this manual listed below:
  - “Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall” on page 13.4
  - “Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly” on page 13.4
  - “Deleting Subkeys from the Registry” on page 13.4
  - “Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation” on page 13.6 (if applicable)

## 8. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

This step restores the SP 5.0 designs, graphics, images, and signatures to the SP 6.0 Server computer.

► **To restore designs, graphics, images, and signatures:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Designs folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Images folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Signatures folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.

## 9. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.



➤ **Log in and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [10. "Upgrade Client Computers" on page 14.12.](#)
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
  - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).OR
  - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

**Result:** A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The Message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\`DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt` file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the `.TXT` file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

## 10. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

## 11. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

SP 6.0 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.0 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Follow the instructions listed in [Appendix D - OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros](#).

## Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers

**If your Server computer will be a different computer than your existing Secure Perfect computer, then follow the instructions in this section.**

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using a second computer:**

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 14.14\)](#)
2. [Set Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.14\)](#)
3. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server \(page 14.15\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 14.16\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 14.16\)](#)
6. [Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 14.17\)](#)
7. [Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.19\)](#)
8. [Run Create SP Database \(page 14.22\)](#)
9. [License Your Secure Perfect 6.0 System \(page 14.23\)](#)
10. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.24\)](#)
11. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 14.24\)](#)
12. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 14.26\)](#)
13. [Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code \(page 14.26\)](#)
14. [Uninstall Secure Perfect 5.0 from Original Computer \(page 14.26\)](#)

## Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

### 1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

### 2. Set Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

► **To set up your SP 6.0 Server computer:**

1. Since your new SP 6.0 database Server computer will be a different computer than your current SP 5.0 computer, you will need to set it up now. This includes setting up:
  - Hardware (such as the monitor, network board, and Digi board, if one is used)
  - Software
    - Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server operating system
    - SQL Server 2000 with appropriate Service Pack (At this time, Service Pack 3a is required and auto installs with SP 5.0.)
2. Install Secure Perfect 6.0. Follow instructions in the sections listed in [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#), [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#), or [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition](#) depending on your installation.

**NOTE:** Exception during the installation process: DO NOT license at this time (as instructed in the sequence). You will license your system after the database is converted.

3. Return to this point and continue.

### 3. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or Secure Perfect as long as services are set to Automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 5.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

➤ **To stop services on the 5.0 Server computer and all clients:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
  - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager**

services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

**Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.

4. If the **Secure Perfect API** service is running, stop that service now.
5. Exit the **Services** application.

## 4. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 5.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility or Microsoft Enterprise Manager. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, and signatures will need to be restored after Secure Perfect 6.0 is installed.

## 5. OPTIONAL: Run *Database Maintenance Plan Wizard*

On your SP 5.0 Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

### ► To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.

6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.  
**Result:** The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.
9. Select all or specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan** screen. Click **Next**.
10. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Database Integrity Check** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** screen. Click **Next**.
16. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** screen. Click **Next**.
17. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** screen displays, scroll and review your selections. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.

## 6. Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 5.0 Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.0 Server computer.

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with 7. [“Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server”](#) on page 14.19.

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers**.

2. Navigate to and open the **Databases** folder. This procedure may take several minutes.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect Shortcut** menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks**, then **Backup Database**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.
7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.



8. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
9. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.

**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** screen displays, click **OK**.
12. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.
13. Exit the Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager application.

## 7. Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

**NOTE:** When you are restoring the SP 5.0 database, you will replace the databases that were created during the SP 6.0 installation.

If you are:

- NOT familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- FAMILIAR with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, restore the three databases and then proceed with [8. "Run Create SP Database" on page 14.22.](#)

### ➤ To restore the SP 5.0 databases backup:

1. Verify that all SP 6.0 network clients other than the Enterprise Server computer have logged out and that the SP 6.0 services are shut down.

2. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
3. Navigate to <Server Name>SPSQL where <Server Name> is the name of the server computer.
4. Open the Databases folder for your Secure Perfect server.

The database was backed up using one of two options: disk or tape. Refer to the list below for the appropriate restore procedures.

- From disk, see [page 14.20](#).
- From tape, see [page 14.21](#).

## Restoring from Disk

If the databases were backed up onto disk, follow the procedures below.

If the databases were backed up onto tape, refer to [page 14.21](#).

### ► To restore the SP 5.0 database backup from disk:

1. Click **SecurePerfect**.
2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.
- Result:** The **Restore database** window displays.
3. In the **Restore as database** field, verify that **SecurePerfect** displays.
4. In the **Restore** category, select **From device**.
5. On the **Parameters** pane, verify that **Restore backup set** and **Database - complete** are selected.
6. Click **Select Devices**.

**Result:** The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.

7. In the **Restore from** area, select **Disk** and click **Add**.

**Result:** The **Choose Restore Destination** window displays.

8. Select **File name**, click **Browse**, and navigate to where the backup file is stored. When the path and file name display in the **File name** field, click **OK** in the **Backup Device Location** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Destination** window.
10. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Devices** window.
11. Click **Options**.
12. Check **Force restore over existing databases**.
13. In the **Move to physical file name** field, confirm that the desired location for the database files is displayed. If the correct location does not display, enter the correct path by typing over the existing path.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **OK** to begin the restore process.

**Result:** The **Restore Progress** dialog displays. Upon completion, you should receive a message stating that the restore was successful. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

16. Repeat steps [1](#) through [15](#) for the SecurePerfectArchive and SecurePerfectHistory databases.
17. Exit the Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager application.

At this time, go to [8. "Run Create SP Database" on page 14.22](#) to continue with the upgrade.

## Restoring from Tape

If the databases were backed up onto tape, follow the procedures below.

### ► To restore the SP 5.0 database from tape:

1. Click **SecurePerfect**.

2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.

**Result:** The **Restore database** window displays.

3. In the **Restore as database** field, verify that SecurePerfect displays.
4. At the **Restore:** category, select the **From device** option button.
5. In the **Parameters Devices** area, verify that **Restore backup set** and **Database - complete** are selected.
6. Click **Select Devices**.
7. In the window that displays, select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

**Result:** The tape drive displays as the default in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box.

8. Click **OK** two times.

**NOTE:** If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click **View Contents**. A list of files will display with the contents of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list.

**Result:** An SQL Server Enterprise Manager window will display stating, **Restore of database, "Secure Perfect" completed successfully**. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

9. Repeat steps 1 through 8 for the SecurePerfectArchive and SecurePerfectHistory databases.
10. Exit the Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager application.

## 8. Run *Create SP Database*



The database Server computer **MUST** be the computer on which you run the database conversion.

The 'Create SP Database' utility converts the SP 5.0 database format to SP 6.0 database format. During this process, the Database Integrity Tool also runs. This tool checks the integrity of your database.

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

➤ **To run 'Create SP Database' on your Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer:**

1. Click **Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Create SP Database**.

**Result:** The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

2. Select **Enterprise Edition** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Create/Convert Database** window displays.

3. Enter your sa password.

4. Click **Create/Convert Database**.

**Result:** The message **Do you wish to convert to the current version of Secure Perfect Database?** displays.

5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

**Result:** The **Convert Database** window displays.

6. Click **Convert Database**.

**Result:** A status bar displays the progress of the conversion. Upon completion, the message **Secure Perfect Database successfully converted!** displays.

7. Click **OK**.

## 9. License Your Secure Perfect 6.0 System

At this time, you must license SP 6.0. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

## 10. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

This step moves the SP 5.0 designs, graphics, images, and signatures to the SP 6.0 Server computer.

➤ **To restore designs, graphics, images, and signatures:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 5.0 computer into the Designs folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 5.0 computer into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 5.0 computer into the Images folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 5.0 computer into the Signatures folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.

## 11. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log in and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [12. "Upgrade Client Computers" on page 14.26.](#)

2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
  - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

  - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

**Result:** A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**
5. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**
6. Navigate to the logfile. The Message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\`DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt` file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the `.TXT` file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.

9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

## 12. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71.](#)

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

## 13. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code

SP 6.0 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.0 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Follow the instructions listed in [Appendix D - OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros.](#)

## 14. Uninstall Secure Perfect 5.0 from Original Computer

Once SP 6.0 is installed, configured, and running on the new computer, you may uninstall SP 5.0 from the original computer.

➤ **To uninstall SP 5.0:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.



2. Click **Secure Perfect 5.0**. You may need to scroll down.

3. Click **Remove**.

**Result:** The message **Are you sure you want to remove Secure Perfect 5.0 from your computer?** displays.

4. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** The SP 5.0 application will be removed.

## Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - PROFESSIONAL SERVERS ONLY

The SP 6.0 Professional Server computer runs on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Server. Client computers can run on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional.

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

You may follow one of two scenarios when converting to SP 6.0:

**NOTE:** If your SP 6.0 Server computer will be the same computer as your existing Secure Perfect system, refer to Scenario 1. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.0 Server computer.

**Scenario 1:** The existing SP 5.0 computer will become the SP 6.0 Server computer.

**Scenario 1 begins on [page 14.29](#).**

**NOTE:** If you plan on using a new or different computer for your SP 6.0 Server, refer to Scenario 2. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.0 Server computer.

**Scenario 2:** The SP 6.0 Server computer will be a different computer than the existing SP 5.0 computer.

**Scenario 2 begins on [page 14.37](#).**

## Scenario 1 - Same Computer

If your SP 6.0 Server computer will be the same computer as your existing SP 5.0 system, then follow the instructions in this section.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using the same computer:**

**NOTE:** To perform the upgrade, log in as a user with administrative rights, such as administrator.

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 14.30\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 \(page 14.30\)](#)
3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 14.31\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases \(page 14.31\)](#)
5. [Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System \(page 14.33\)](#)
6. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.34\)](#)
7. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 14.34\)](#)
8. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 14.36\)](#)
9. [Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code \(page 14.36\)](#)

## Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

## 1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

## 2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 5.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

➤ **To stop services on the SP 5.0 Server computer and all clients:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three Secure Perfect services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
- If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the Diagnostic service will stop the Manager and System Manager as well if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

**Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.

4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
5. Exit the **Services** application.

### 3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 5.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Images, Graphics, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want.

**You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility which is explained in the next step.**

**Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, and signatures will need to be restored after SP 6.0 is installed.

### 4. Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

► **To back up your Secure Perfect database:**

1. Create a folder on your system where the backup files will be stored.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Backup & Restore SP Databases**.

If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: `Maintenance.exe`

**Result:** A **Maintenance** window displays.

3. Click **Backup**.

**Result:** A **Maintenance - [Backup]** destination window displays.

4. Accept the default **Login** of 'sa' and enter the **Password** for sa. If you have not already done so, we strongly suggest that you assign a unique password of your choice.
5. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files will be stored. Double-click to open the **Destination** folder.
6. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop the destination folder onto each of the fields:
  - SecurePerfect
  - SecurePerfectArchive
  - SecurePerfectHistory

**Result:** The .BAK files in each field will be automatically named, to include the directory path, file name, date, and time.

7. If you choose not to back up any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is selected but no destination is entered in the database field, backup of that database file will not occur.
8. Click **Backup**.

**Result:** The backup process begins. When backup is complete, a dialog box displays a message verifying the successful backup of the chosen databases.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the **Maintenance** window.

## 5. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System

➤ **To install the Secure Perfect 6.0 application and license your system:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#), [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#), or [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition](#) depending on your installation. Some items to note:
  - If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
  - Secure Perfect 5.0 is automatically uninstalled. (See steps below.)
  - The 'Create SP Database' utility automatically launches.
  - The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

➤ **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Ctrl-Alt-Delete**.
2. The **Windows Security** dialog displays.
3. Click **Task Manager**.
4. At the **Task Manager** window, **Install** will display a status of **Not Responding**.
5. Select the line **Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
6. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.
7. Once the steps above are completed, follow the instructions in the sections of this manual listed below:
  - [“Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall” on page 13.4](#)
  - [“Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly” on page 13.4](#)

- “Deleting Subkeys from the Registry” on page 13.4
- “Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation” on page 13.6 (if applicable)

## 6. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

This step restores the SP 5.0 designs, graphics, images, and signatures to the SP 6.0 Server computer.

➤ **To restore designs, graphics, images, and signatures:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Designs folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Images folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Signatures folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.

## 7. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log in and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved.
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.



3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:

- Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

- Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.

4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

**Result:** A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The Message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.

7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\  
DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.

8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.

9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps [5](#) through [8](#).

10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

## 8. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71.](#)

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

## 9. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code

Secure Perfect 6.0 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.0 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Follow the instructions listed in [“OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros” on page D.1.](#)

## Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers

**If your Server computer will be a different computer than your existing Secure Perfect computer, then follow the instructions in this section.**

➤ **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using a second computer:**

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 14.38\)](#)
2. [Set Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.38\)](#)
3. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server \(page 14.39\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 14.40\)](#)
5. [Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server \(page 14.40\)](#)
6. [Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.42\)](#)
7. [Run Create SP Database \(page 14.43\)](#)
8. [License Your Secure Perfect 6.0 System \(page 14.44\)](#)
9. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 14.44\)](#)
10. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 14.45\)](#)
11. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 14.46\)](#)
12. [Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code \(page 14.46\)](#)
13. [Uninstall SP 5.0 from Original Computer \(page 14.47\)](#)

## Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

### 1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

### 2. Set Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

► **To set up your Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer:**

1. Since your new SP 6.0 database Server computer will be a different computer than your current SP 5.0 computer, you will need to set it up now. This includes setting up:
  - Hardware (such as the monitor, network board, and Digi board, if one is used)
  - Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system
2. Install Secure Perfect 6.0. Follow instructions in the sections listed in [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#), [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#), or [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition](#) depending on your installation.

**NOTE:** Exceptions during the installation process: DO NOT license at this time (as instructed in the sequence). You will license your system after the database is converted.

3. Return to this point and continue.

### 3. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or Secure Perfect as long as services are set to automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 5.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

➤ **To stop services on the 5.0 Server computer and all clients:**

1. Shut down all client applications to ensure that any work in progress is saved.
2. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

3. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
- If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

4. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the Diagnostic service will stop the Manager and System Manager as well if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

**Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.

5. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
6. Exit the **Services** application.

## 4. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 5.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Databases using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility which is explained in the next step. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, and signatures will need to be restored after SP 6.0 is installed.

## 5. Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

### ➤ To back up the databases:

1. Create a folder on your system where the backup files will be stored.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect, then Backup & Restore SP Databases**.

If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: `Maintenance.exe`

**Result:** A **Maintenance** window displays.

3. Click **Backup**.

**Result:** A **Maintenance - [Backup]** destination window displays.

4. Accept the default **Login** of sa. Enter the 'sa' password, if applicable. If you have not already done so, we strongly suggest that you assign a unique password of your choice.
5. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files will be stored. Double-click to open the **Destination** folder.
6. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop the destination folder onto each of the fields:
  - SecurePerfect
  - SecurePerfectArchive
  - SecurePerfectHistory

**Result:** The .BAK files in each field will be automatically named, to include the directory path, file name, date, and time.

7. If you choose not to back up any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is selected but no destination is entered in the database field, backup of that database file will not occur.

8. Click **Backup**.

**Result:** The backup process begins. When backup is complete, a dialog box displays a message verifying the successful backup of the chosen databases.

9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the **Maintenance** window.

## 6. Restore Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

**NOTE:** When you are restoring the SP 5.0 database, you will replace the databases that were created during the SP 6.0 installation.

➤ **To restore a SP 5.0 database backup:**

1. Verify that Secure Perfect 6.0 is installed on the destination computer.
2. Stop Secure Perfect 6.0 services.
3. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

**Result:** A **Maintenance** window displays.

4. Click **Restore**.

**Result:** A **Maintenance - [Restore]** destination window displays.

5. Enter your 'sa' password.
6. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files are presently stored. Double-click to open the folder.
7. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop from the **Backup Source File** area onto each of the fields:
  - SecurePerfect
  - SecurePerfectArchive
  - SecurePerfectHistory
8. If you choose not to restore any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is checked, but no destination is entered, the restoration will not occur.



9. Click **Restore**.

**Result:** The message **Did you turn off the Secure Perfect Services?** displays.

10. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** The restoration process begins. When restoration is complete, a dialog box displays a message, verifying the restoration of the chosen databases.

**NOTE:** The restoration message includes text advising that you must license your Secure Perfect 6.0 system.

11. Click **OK**.

12. Exit **Restore**. The database restoration is complete.

## 7. Run *Create SP Database*



The database Server computer **MUST** be the computer on which you run the database conversion.

The 'Create SP Database' utility converts the SP 5.0 database format to SP 6.0 database format. During this process, the Database Integrity Tool also runs. This tool checks the integrity of your database.

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

### ➤ To run 'Create SP Database' on your SP 6.0 Server computer:

1. Click **Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Create SP Database**.

**Result:** The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

2. Select **Professional Edition** and click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Create/Convert Database** window displays.

3. Enter your 'sa' password.

4. Click **Create/Convert Database**.

**Result:** The popup **Do you wish to convert to the current version of Secure Perfect Database?** displays.

5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

**Result:** The **Convert Database** window displays.

6. Click **Convert Database**.

**Result:** A status bar displays the progress of the conversion. Upon completion, the message **Secure Perfect Database successfully converted!** displays.

7. Click **OK**.

## 8. License Your Secure Perfect 6.0 System

At this time, you must license SP 6.0. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

## 9. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

This step moves the SP 5.0 designs, graphics, images, and signatures to the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.

### ► To restore designs, graphics, images, and signatures:

1. Copy the designs from the SP 5.0 computer into the Designs folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 5.0 computer into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 5.0 computer into the Images folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 5.0 computer into the Signatures folder on the SP 6.0 Server computer.

## 10. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log in and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved.
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
  - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).OR
  - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

**Result:** A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The Message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\`DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt` file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

## 11. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

## 12. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code

Secure Perfect 6.0 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.0 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Follow the instructions listed in [Appendix D - OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros](#).

## 13. Uninstall SP 5.0 from Original Computer

Once SP 6.0 is installed, configured, and running on the new computer, you may uninstall SP 5.0 from the original computer.

➤ **To uninstall SP 5.0:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
2. Click **Secure Perfect 5.0**. You may need to scroll down.
3. Click **Remove**.

**Result:** The message **Are you sure you want to remove Secure Perfect 5.0 from your computer?** displays.

4. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** The Secure Perfect 5.0 application will be removed.

## Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - CUSTOM SPLIT INSTALLATION

The Secure Perfect 6.0 Enterprise Server computer runs on Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard operating system. Client computers run on Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server operating systems.

Since the split installation option allows you to install the three Secure Perfect components (Database Server, File Server, and Application) separately, the upgrade will need to proceed in the same order in which they were installed.

**NOTE:** The steps below assume each application is on a separate computer. If you used only two, simply go to the computer where that component is located.

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

- **FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade a custom split installation:**
- **On the Secure Perfect Application:**
  - 1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords on the Application Computer \(page 14.49\)](#)
  - 2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server on the Application Computer \(page 14.50\)](#)
- **On the File Server:**
  - 3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer \(page 14.51\)](#)
- **On the Database Server:**
  - 4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 14.51\)](#)

5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 14.53\)](#)
6. [Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases \(page 14.54\)](#)
- **On All Computers:**
  7. [Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System \(page 14.54\)](#)
- **On the File Server:**
  8. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 File Server Computer \(page 14.56\)](#)
- **On the Secure Perfect Application:**
  9. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 14.56\)](#)
- **On Completion of the Upgrade:**
  10. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 14.58\)](#)
  11. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 14.58\)](#)

## Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

### 1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords on the Application Computer

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you

have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

## 2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server on the Application Computer

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 5.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 5.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

### ➤ To stop services on the 5.0 Application computer and all clients:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools, then Services.**

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
  - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

**Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.



4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
5. Exit the **Services** application.

### 3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer

Everything in your existing SP 5.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, and signatures will need to be restored after SP 6.0 is installed.

### 4. Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 5.0 Database Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.0 Database Server computer.

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with 5. [“OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard” on page 14.53.](#)

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager.**

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers.**

2. Navigate to and open the **Databases** folder. This procedure may take several minutes.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfect.**

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect** Shortcut menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks, then Backup Database.**

**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.
7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add.**) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.
8. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media.** The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
9. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.

**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** screen displays, click **OK**.
12. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.
13. Exit the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

## 5. OPTIONAL: Run *Database Maintenance Plan Wizard*

On your SP 5.0 Database Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

► **To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.  
**Result:** The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.

11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.
13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** screen. Click **Next**.
17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** screen. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** screen displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.

## 6. Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases

If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the cleaned database files would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. “[Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager](#)” on page 14.51.

## 7. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 and License Your System

### ➤ To install the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions.

2. Follow the instructions as listed in [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software](#), [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#), or [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Edition](#) depending on your installation. Install in this order:

- Database Server
- File Server
- Application

Some items to note:

- If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
- Secure Perfect 5.0 is automatically uninstalled. (See steps below.)
- The 'Create SP Database' utility automatically launches.
- The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

**NOTE:** If the Application resides on the same computer as either the Database Server or File Server, DO NOT license the application until both the Database Server and File Server are installed and the database has been converted.

➤ **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Ctrl-Alt-Delete**.
2. The **Windows Security** dialog displays.
3. Click **Task Manager**.
4. At the **Task Manager** window, **Install** will display a status of **Not Responding**.
5. Select the line **Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
6. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.
7. Once the steps above are completed, follow the instructions in the sections of this manual listed below:

- “Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall” on page 13.4
- “Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly” on page 13.4
- “Deleting Subkeys from the Registry” on page 13.4
- “Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation” on page 13.6 (if applicable)

## 8. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 File Server Computer

This step restores the SP 5.0 designs, graphics, images, and signatures to the SP 6.0 File Server computer.

➤ **To restore designs, graphics, images, and signatures:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Designs folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Images folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Signatures folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.

## 9. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in ‘Master’ and not ‘master.’

► **Log in and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved.
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
  - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

  - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

**Result:** A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The Message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\  
DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate

or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.

8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps [5](#) through [8](#).
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

## 10. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

## 11. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

SP 6.0 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.0 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Follow the instructions listed in [Appendix D - OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros](#).



## Secure Perfect 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.0 - CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT

Review [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment” on page 5.1](#) and this chapter before you begin your upgrade. Since the cluster environment installation option allows you to install the Database Server and File Server components separately, the upgrade will need to proceed in the same order in which they were installed.

**NOTE:** The steps below assume each application is on a separate computer. If you used only one, then the Database Server and File Server computer as referenced below will be the same computer.

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 14.71](#).

➤ **FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade a cluster environment installation:**

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 14.60\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server \(page 14.61\)](#)

➤ **On the File Server:**

3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer \(page 14.62\)](#)

➤ **On the Database Server:**

4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 14.62\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 14.64\)](#)
6. [Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases \(page 14.65\)](#)

➤ **Uninstall Secondary Nodes:**

7. [Uninstall Secondary Nodes \(page 14.65\)](#)

➤ **On All Computers:**

8. [Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Application and License Your System \(page 14.66\)](#)

➤ **On the File Server:**

9. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 File Server Computer \(page 14.67\)](#)

➤ **On the Secure Perfect Application:**

10. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 14.68\)](#)

➤ **On Completion of the Upgrade:**

11. [Upgrade Additional Client Computers \(page 14.70\)](#)
12. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 14.70\)](#)

## Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

## 1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

## 2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 5.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 5.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

➤ **To stop services on the 5.0 computer and all clients:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
- If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

**Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.

4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.

5. Exit the **Services** application.

### 3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer

Everything in your existing SP 5.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, and signatures will need to be restored after SP 6.0 is installed.

### 4. Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 5.0 Database Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.0 Database Server computer.

**NOTE:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with 5. [“OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard”](#) on page 14.64.

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager.**

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers.**

2. Navigate to and open the **Databases** folder. This procedure may take several minutes.

3. Right-click SecurePerfect.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect Shortcut** menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks**, then **Backup Database**.

**Result:** The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.

6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.

7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.

8. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.

9. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.

10. Click **OK** to start the backup.

**Result:** A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** screen displays, click **OK**.

12. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.

13. Exit the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

## 5. OPTIONAL: Run *Database Maintenance Plan Wizard*

On your SP 5.0 Database Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

➤ **To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.  
**Result:** The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.
13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.

14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** screen. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** screen. Click **Next**.
17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** screen. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** screen displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.

## 6. Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases

If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the cleaned database files would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. [“Back Up Secure Perfect 5.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 14.62.

## 7. Uninstall Secondary Nodes

Before upgrading the primary node, you will need to uninstall the secondary nodes.

➤ **To uninstall the secondary nodes:**

1. Make sure all clients are logged off.
2. Close all Secure Perfect applications such as DiagView.
3. Verify that Secure Perfect services are stopped. Refer to [“Stop Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Client Computer”](#) on page 14.71.

4. Perform a failover to the Cluster secondary node. The Cluster group that contains the SQL Server and file shares must be failed over to the secondary node.
5. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
6. From the list of currently installed programs that display, select **Secure Perfect Windows Server SQL Cluster Node Install**.
7. Click **Remove**.
8. Perform a failover to primary node.
9. You are now ready to convert/upgrade your Secure Perfect database.

## 8. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Application and License Your System

➤ **To install the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions.



2. Follow the instructions as listed in [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 in a Clustered Environment](#). Review the Pre-Installation Checklist before you begin.

**NOTE:** The steps below assume the Database Server and File Server computer as referenced below will be the same computer.

Install in this order:

- Primary Node (Database and File Server)
- Secondary Node (SP Node Install)
- Secure Perfect Application as a First-Time License Client Computer on a different and separate computer than the Cluster Nodes

**NOTE:** The Secure Perfect application can be successfully installed on a Windows 2000, 2003, or Advanced Server computer as well.

3. Some items to note during installations:
  - If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation automatically installs with Secure Perfect 6.0.
  - Secure Perfect 5.0 is automatically uninstalled. (If you experience any problems, refer to [“Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall” on page 13.4.](#))
  - The ‘Create SP Database’ utility automatically launches.
  - The license application automatically launches on the Secure Perfect client computer. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 8 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

## 9. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signatures to Secure Perfect 6.0 File Server Computer

This step restores the SP 5.0 designs, graphics, images, and signatures to the SP 6.0 File Server computer.

➤ **To restore designs, graphics, images, and signatures:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Designs folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Images folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 5.0 backup source into the Signatures folder on the SP 6.0 File Server computer.

## 10. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log in and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved.
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
  - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

- Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.

4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

**Result:** A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

**Result:** A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The Message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\  
DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

## 11. Upgrade Additional Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computers and the First Time License Secure Perfect Client computer, you will need to upgrade all additional networked client computers (those that are running as clients to the Database Server computer.) Repeat the sequence of steps just as you performed in [“Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Application and License Your System”](#) on page 14.66.

Once you have finished upgrading any additional client computers, you need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

## 12. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

SP 6.0 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.0 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Follow the instructions listed in [Appendix D - OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros](#).

## Upgrading Client Computers

If you have networked computers running as Secure Perfect 5.0 clients, you will need to upgrade the client computers now. Secure Perfect 6.0 supports client computers running Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server. You may want to review your Secure Perfect 6.0 architecture for the options available. Refer to [“What’s New in Secure Perfect 6.0?” on page 1.8](#) for a description of the new architecture.



You **MUST** have the Secure Perfect 6.0 Database Server computer set up and running before you attempt to install Secure Perfect 6.0 on the client computers!

The process of upgrading client computers observes a specific sequence of steps. Each step is detailed in the sections that follow.

1. [Stop Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Client Computer \(page 14.71\)](#)
2. [Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Software \(page 14.72\)](#)

### 1. Stop Services on Secure Perfect 5.0 Client Computer

Before proceeding, the Secure Perfect services must be stopped.

➤ **To stop services on the SP 5.0 client computer:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

**Result:** The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three Secure Perfect services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics  
Secure Perfect Manager  
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
  - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** as well if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

**Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.

4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
5. Exit the Services application.

## 2. Install Secure Perfect 6.0 Software

► **To install Secure Perfect 6.0 software:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log out and log back in as a user with these permissions.
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.0 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. If using the typical installation procedure, review [Chapter 3 - Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Computer](#) and [Chapter 7 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software on Additional Clients](#). Then follow the instructions in the order as listed.

If taking advantage of the SP 6.0 features, review your selection of options for installing the Secure Perfect components.

4. Open and log in to the Secure Perfect 6.0 client program.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

## Configuration Notes - Ensuring Success

Here are a few pointers for a most efficient transition to Secure Perfect 6.0:

- ☐ When your Secure Perfect 6.0 system is fully converted and upgraded, log in to the Secure Perfect application as one of your previously defined operators.

**Upgrades:** Versions of Secure Perfect 4.0 and earlier did not require case-sensitive default login passwords. When upgrading from a version of Secure Perfect 4.0 or earlier, you may experience a problem logging in. If you have never changed it, your Secure Perfect default password may be set to initial caps, as in 'Master' and not 'master.'

- ☐ If you need to change the host for each micro, you will need to change this assignment by taking the micros offline and selecting **Micro** from the **Device** menu, then completing the change on the **Micro Form, Micro Definition** tab. Select a **Host Computer** from the drop-down list.
- ☐ If you are changing a Micro/5-PX to a Micro/5-PXN, follow these steps:
  1. Select **Devices**, then **Micro**. The **Micro Form** opens with the **Micro Definition** tab displayed.
  2. Click **Search** for a list of previously defined micros.
  3. From the list of records, select the micro that you are replacing with a Micro/5-PXN.
  4. Select the **Micro Type** as **Micro/5PXN**.
  5. Select **Connection type** from the drop-down list as either **Network** or **Network + Dial-up**.
  6. Change the **PC Name**, if applicable.
  7. On the **Port Settings** tab, enter the **IP Address** of your network micro.
  8. **Save** the micro record.

9. Repeat steps 2 through 8 for all micros that will be replaced by a Micro/5-PXN CPU.

- ☐ Downstream micros do not require reconfiguration since they will automatically inherit the connection type and port settings from the head-of-line micro.
- ☐ If you need to reconfigure the layout of your system where you are breaking a line of micros and creating multiple head-of-line Micro/5-PXN micros, you must do the following:
  1. Change the **Micro Type** to **Micro/5PXN** and back to **Micro/5PX** so the Head of Line option becomes enabled.
  2. In the **Head of Line**, select **Yes**, then **Micro Type** as **Micro/5PXN**.
  3. Select **Connection type** from the drop-down list as either **Network** or **Network + Dial-up**.

**Save** the micro record, then repeat steps 1 through 3 for each micro that requires a change in configuration.



# Appendix A: Diagnostics and Troubleshooting

Secure Perfect 6.0 provides an extensive diagnostic utility. This utility is very flexible in that you can turn the monitoring of many Secure Perfect 6.0 system components on and off. This utility plus some common questions and answers are covered in this chapter.



In this appendix:

[“Turning on Diagnostics” on page A.2](#)

[“Creating a Logfile” on page A.2](#)

[“Viewing the Diagnostics Logs” on page A.3](#)

[“Remote Diagnostics” on page A.4](#)

[“Questions and Answers” on page A.4](#)

## Turning on Diagnostics

To display debug messages in the Diagnostics Log within **Secure Perfect**, the diagnostics for that component you want to monitor (COM port, micro, or client) **MUST** be turned on.

Each client computer will have a set of diagnostic objects that represent what can be monitored on that machine. Diagnostic objects can be controlled remotely (turned on or off). All diagnostic objects can write messages to a common logfile or any diagnostic object can write to a separate logfile that can be defined by the user.

## Creating a Logfile

➤ **To create a logfile:**

1. Select the **Administration** menu, then **Logfile**.

**Result:** The **Logfile Form** displays.

2. Click **ADD**.
3. Your **Computer** name displays.
4. Enter a **LogFile** name to include an **.spl** extension.
5. Click **Browse** to navigate and select a folder in which to store the report.
6. Click **Save**.

➤ **To enable diagnostics:**

1. Select the **Administration** menu, then **Diagnostic Settings**.
2. Click **Search** in the toolbar to display a list box of components in the right window, that you can monitor.
3. Select the desired component.

**NOTE:** All diagnostic objects are prefixed with a machine client name.

4. Select **Enable debug messages** check box and click **Save**.
5. When you are finished troubleshooting the system, don't forget to go back and **DISABLE** debug messages.



The more items you turn on for monitoring, the more the Secure Perfect 6.0 system performance is affected! This is even more important when monitoring port, communications, or micro items.

6. There are many components available to monitor.
  - The diagnostic objects, such as COM1, display the communications protocol between the micro and its server as the information comes into the COM port.
  - The diagnostic objects, such as MICRO 1, display how information is being processed for that micro.
  - The remaining components are for client, manager service, system service, and other functional components.

## Viewing the Diagnostics Logs

Secure Perfect 6.0 provides a convenient way to view what's happening on the system. For each client, there is a default logfile (others can be created) for each day of the week such as `SPEEFriday.spl`. This file is overwritten each week, thus creating a new log for that day.

Additionally, for each client, there is a log located in the `WINNT\system32` folder. Under normal system operation, this log will be empty. It will be used to log messages if the server and the database cannot be reached.

During normal operation of Secure Perfect, informational as well as debug messages are written to the daily log file. Under abnormal conditions, the log file may also contain warning and/or fatal messages indicating failure conditions.

DiagView operates in "real time." To access DiagView, select **Diagnostic Viewer** from the **Administration** menu. That is, every time Secure Perfect 6.0 writes an entry to the log file, DiagView automatically displays the latest message. By default, DiagView displays only the latest

1000 messages. The number displayed can be changed on the **Preferences** Form.

All log files should be saved in the logs folder; it will be easier to locate for backups and upgrades. It is a shared folder which means other clients can gain access to the log files.

## Remote Diagnostics

If you purchased your computer from GE Security, the program pcANYWHERE was included. If you are experiencing problems, this program allows your GE Security Business Partner or Support Center personnel to dial into your Secure Perfect 6.0 computer and observe the situation, thus providing a quicker response and resolution time.

## Questions and Answers

This section provides answers to some common questions.



Always use extreme care when editing the Windows registry! Making a mistake while editing the registry can cause Windows to behave erratically. To fix this problem, you will need to re-install your operating system.

## Installing Sequence for Secure Perfect 6.0

### **What is the order of events during installation?**

The complete order of installation is defined in [“Installation and Setup Outlines”](#) on page 1.12.

### **What does this message mean? “You must have Administrator Rights in order to install Secure Perfect Server software?”**

You are logged in as a user who does not belong to the Administrators group. The Secure Perfect 6.0 software can only be installed by a user who belongs to the Administrators group. Log out, then log in as a user who belongs to the Administrators group or add the user to the Administrators group.

## Secure Perfect 6.0 Client Connection and Startup

**I get a connection error when I try to start the client software. What do I do now?**

1. Make sure that your network client is defined in the **Client Form**.
2. Check the bottom of the **Client Monitor Form** and verify that there is at least one license available.
3. Verify that you are using TCP/IP as your network protocol and that it is configured properly.
4. Verify that the network protocol you are using is installed on both the client and Server computers.
5. On the Server computer, go to the **Services** form and check **Secure Perfect Services**. If the **Status** column is blank for that service, then it is not running. Select the service line, and click the **Start** button:
  - If the status changes to **Started**, then the service is now running. Try to start the program now. If the program still won't start, the network may be down. Check the current day's log on the network client.
  - If the status does not change to **Started**, check the current day's log of the server log. It should display an error message providing a reason for shutting down.

**What are some of the reasons the Secure Perfect 6.0 System Service will not start?**

The Service cannot access the database. The client machine name is not in the client table. The services on the Database server are not running.

**What are some of the reasons the Secure Perfect 6.0 Managers Service will not start?**

System service on the local machine will not start. The local machine did not receive a ping from the license domain machine within the ping timeout interval (check the license domain services are running). Also, client license count may have been exceeded.

**My services shut down unexpectedly. The log reports that the message database is down.**

This indicates a problem with connectivity to the database. In order not to lose any transactions, Secure Perfect 6.0 will save all badge and alarm messages by writing them to a file and read the file back in when the services start up again. Correct the connectivity problem with the database and restart services.

**What does this message mean?**

**Maximum Number of Clients Limit Reached**

The maximum number of clients are already connected to the server.

## Secure Perfect 6.0 User Questions

**Can I customize the toolbar and add more buttons?**

No. The toolbar cannot be customized and buttons cannot be added to the toolbar.

You can, however, change the position of the toolbar. Simply click and drag the toolbar wherever you would like it to be on the screen.

**How do I perform a search on a specific item?**

The **Search** button can be found on any form that provides search capabilities. If you click this button and the current form is blank, all records will be returned. To specify a criteria, fill in the desired information. For example, if you want to find all badgeholders with the last name Smith, type `Smith` in the **Last name** field and click **Search**.

You can also use the \* character which allows you to search for patterns. For example, to search for badgeholders with the last name starting with `Sm*` would yield such names as Smith and Smithers.

**Why can't I delete a record?**

Some forms, such as the **Digital Output Status Form** and the **Manual Door/DO Control Form**, do not contain a **Delete** button because they display status information only. Other forms, such as the **Reader Form**, **Alarm Form**, **Alarm Group Form**, and **Digital Input Form** also do not contain a **Delete** button. To keep the system stable, NO ONE is given permission to delete these records, not even a system administrator. These records are deleted when the associated micro board is deleted. However, on all other forms, you

may be assigned the permission action **All**. (Permission actions are assigned using the **Permission Form**. Verify that the permission assigned to the operator on the **Operator Form** contains the desired permission actions by checking that permission on the **Permission Form**.) If you can't delete on those forms, you do not have permission to do so.

**I'm trying to create an access right, but no readers display in the reader list box. Why?**

Only readers that have been marked **Active** will be displayed in the list box. Go to the **Reader Form** and click the **Reader** tab. Verify that the readers you are using are marked **Active**.

**Why are there no alarms being displayed on the Alarm Monitor Form?**

Check the following:

- Go to the **Alarm Form** and click the **Alarm** tab. Make sure that the **Monitor** option is enabled.
- Schedules in effect regarding alarms.
- The alarms may be in an intrusion zone that is not armed.

**How do I put a reader online?**

From the Secure Perfect 6.0 main menu, go to **Device**, then select **Reader**. From the right side of the screen, select the reader you want to set online and check the **Online** and **Active** options.

**How do I get into the Badge Design program?**

1. The **Secure Perfect 6.0** client you are using must have a license for **Imaging**. Select **Operations**, then **Client Monitor**. The bottom section of the **Client Monitor Form** contains the section **Imaging Information**. (You may need to make the window larger to display the number of **Imaging** licenses presently in use and number of **Imaging** licenses you are allowed, as purchased with your system.) Locate the name of your computer in the **Client** list. Then, look in the column **Imaging status** and verify that it reads **Enabled**.
2. If **Imaging** status reads **Disabled** and the numbers indicate a license is available for use, go to the **Administration** menu and select **Client**. On the **Client Form**, **Client** tab, select **Enabled** in **Imaging Status** to enable **Imaging**. Return to the **Client Monitor Form** to validate the **Enabled** status.

3. If you are licensed and Imaging is enabled, the **Edit Badge Design** button becomes enabled allowing you to enter the Badge Design program. Sample badge designs are provided to get you started.

**When I run DiagView and try to open a file, only one logfile shows in the Logfile Dialog.**

This indicates the database cannot be accessed. Test the database connection by following the steps in [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Client Connection and Startup” on page A.5.](#)

**Services shut down while DiagView is running. A dialog box pops up and displays the message “Diagnostic Manager Service has Shutdown”. After I restart services, no new messages are displayed.**

Communication has been lost with the services and the file needs to be reopened again when the services are up and running.

**I do not understand the order in which the services should be shut down and started.**

Shutting down the Diagnostics Service will shut down the other Services. Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.0 Services Overview” on page 9.2](#) for a detailed description of Secure Perfect Services. Note the service dependencies as described in [Table A-1](#):

**Table A-1: Service Dependencies**

Service	Dependency
Diagnostics	Microsoft SQL Server 2000 must be running on the Database Server PC before diagnostics will run on Secure Perfect client computers.
System	Diagnostics
Manager	Diagnostics, System
API	Diagnostics, System, System Manager



**I shut down my license domain server (cold boot). My clients are reporting database errors (that is, they have lost their network connection).**

This can occur when the network goes down for any purpose (common examples: hub loses power temporarily; network cable cut or broken).

It is best to either have clients use the **Client Monitor Form** to force users off, or notify all clients to restart after a cold boot of the server is complete and after services have restarted on the license domain.

**My services will not shut down. Is there something I can do besides rebooting the system?**

Run the program `spstop.exe` found in the Secure Perfect folder. Click **Start**, then **Run**. At the **Run** window, click **Browse** and navigate to `spstop.exe`. Click **Open** to display the file name in the command line of the **Run** window and enter `all`. The **Run** window now displays as follows:

```
"Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect\
SPstop.exe" all
```

Click **OK** to stop the services.

**What should a normal startup of services look like in the logfile?**

It should look similar to the following with the exception of machine name and machine-encoded seed and micros that may show up in the log. The following sample startup script displays a sequence of key events in the startup process. Note in bold: **SYSTEM SERVICE STARTED, STARTING MANAGER SERVICE**, etc.

## Hardware Questions

**What is the maximum number of readers per micro?**

That depends on the micro. Refer to [Table 8-1, "Licensing Capacities,"](#) on page 8.2.

**My COM port is not working as expected. What should I do now?**

Use the **Micro Utility Form** to troubleshoot communications between the host and the micro.

- Make sure the **State** field shows the micro as **Online**. If it is **Offline**, right-click, then select **Set Online**. If it is **Error**, then the host is not able to communicate correctly with the micro.
- If this is a direct-connect micro, make sure the **Connection** field shows **Connected**.
- Make sure the baud rate setting on the micro matches the baud rate setting for the computer's COM port.
- Make sure the **Comm. device** field shows the proper communications port for this micro, that is, COM1 for COM port 1.
- Use the **Status** and **Message Queue** fields to check the condition of the communications.

Refer to the Online Help for information on status messages.

If everything looks all right on the **Micro Utility Form**, check the hardware settings:

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then **Control Panel**.
2. From the **Control Panel** window, double-click **System**, then select **Device Manager**, then **Ports**.
3. Check that the baud rate on the host matches the baud rate set for the micro.

**My network micro is not working as expected. What should I do now?**

Follow the same steps as in **COM Port Not Working** (as discussed above). Verify the micro's IP address from the **Comm Device** field. If no problems are identified on the **Micro Utility** form, try pinging the micro using the IP address presented in the **Micro Utility** form.

For example: `C:\ping 192.9.201.107`

**Result:** If the ping command fails with a Request timed out message, verify that the micro IP address is correct, that the micro is operational, and that all the gateways (routers) between this computer and the micro are operational. You will receive a reply screen display.

# Appendix B: OPTIONALS: Special Hardware and Software

This chapter details procedures to follow when installing optional hardware and software.



In this appendix:

[“Installing Secure Perfect on a Thin Client Terminal Server” on page B.2](#)

[“Setting Up a Digi Serial-Port Expander” on page B.4](#)

[“Setting Up pcANYWHERE” on page B.5](#)

[“Setting Up Dial-Up Modems” on page B.6](#)

[“Installing Access 2002 on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Servers” on page B.7](#)

## Installing Secure Perfect on a Thin Client Terminal Server

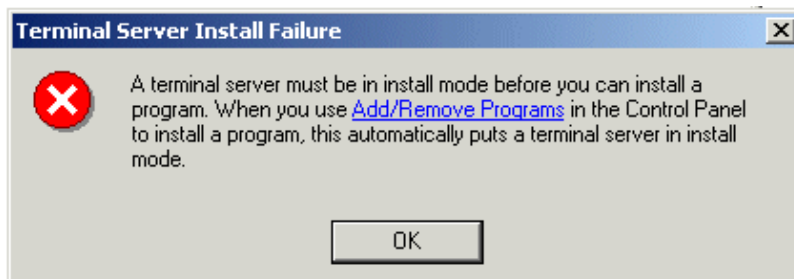
**NOTE:** Your Secure Perfect software license limits the number of Thin Client installations allowed. Refer to [“Licensing Capacities” on page 8.2](#).

Install Thin Client software on the appropriate computers. Refer to the appropriate installation and configuration instructions for your brand of hardware. Windows documentation provides additional details of virtual workstation technology and Thin Client services installation and access. If you have additional questions, consult your IS Department for assistance.

➤ **To install Secure Perfect on a Thin Client Terminal Server computer:**

1. Insert the Secure Perfect CD into your CD-ROM drive.

**Result:** A **Terminal Server Install Failure** dialog displays as in [Figure B-1](#).



**Figure B-1. Terminal Server Install Failure Message**

2. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The dialog box closes.

3. If not already displayed, browse to the Secure Perfect CD content. This is typically D:\
4. Double-click `Terminal.exe` to begin the Secure Perfect software installation.

5. Continue with [“Selecting Installation Type” on page 4.4](#) and proceed with complete Secure Perfect installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Return to this point when the entire installation process is complete.

Following installation of Secure Perfect 6.0 on a computer with Thin Client services enabled, a manual reboot is required to complete the process. Reboot your computer at this time and then proceed to log in.

➤ **Log in to the Secure Perfect 6.0 application:**

*Default login ID is secure and the password is master. The language is English.*

1. Select the **File** menu and then **Login**. For additional details, review [“Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 9.1](#). There are additional system parameters you will need to address.

2. Enter your login ID and password.

If logging into Secure Perfect 6.0 using a client, you **MUST** have a valid operating system (Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Professional, or Windows XP Professional), user name, and password, along with a valid Secure Perfect 6.0 login ID and password on the Server computer. Those login IDs must be part of the *SPAdmin* local group on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer.

3. Click **OK**.

4. Select the **Administration** menu, **Client** option to open the **Client** form.

**Result:** The **Client** form opens with the **Client** tab displayed.

5. In the **Thin Client Status** combination group, select **Enabled**.

**Result:** Thin Client Terminal Server installation of Secure Perfect is now complete.

6. Thin Client software must be installed on all computers that are going to connect to the Thin Client Server and access Secure Perfect.
7. Your Secure Perfect software license limits the number of Thin Client installations allowed. Refer to [“Licensing Capacities” on page 8.2](#).

## Setting Up a Digi Serial-Port Expander

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the Digi board is already set up for you.*

The Digi serial-port expander is a GE Security approved serial-port expander. The purpose of the Digi serial-port expander is to provide additional COM ports, which are required for wiring direct-connect micros and communicating with dial-up micros using modems.

**NOTE:** If you plan on using CCTV devices to interface with Secure Perfect 6.0, you will need additional serial ports; therefore, you will need a Digi serial-port expander. However, integrated digital video recorders and equipment use an ethernet interface.

➤ **To install or change the configuration of the Digi serial-port expander:**

1. Shut down the computer and turn the power off. Remove the power cord from the back of the computer. (Stand-by power will cause the system to automatically start up on the insertion of a new card of any type into the PCI bus.)
2. Open the computer and install the Digi board into any free PCI slot of the motherboard. Secure the card to the computer chassis.
3. Close the computer case and connect the Digi box to the cable from the Digi board you just installed.
4. Turn the power on and wait for the computer to reboot. If the computer does not reboot, manually reboot the system at this time.

**Result:** During the boot sequence, Windows 2000 will detect the Digi serial-port expander and prompt you for the Windows 2000 Server CD.

**NOTE:** If this is a client computer, during the boot sequence, Windows 2000 will detect the Digi serial-port expander and prompt you for the Windows 2000 Professional CD.

5. Insert the Windows 2000 Server CD.

**Result:** A screen displays, prompting you for the type of module you have attached to the board.

6. Select **16em** if you are using the 16-port expander box (**16em** is the default setting) or **8em** if you are using the 8-port expander box.

7. Click **Add** then **Next**.

**Result:** You are asked what port number you want to install first, beginning with the first available COM port (usually, COM 4 if an internal modem is installed).

We recommend starting with COM 5, ending with COM 20 on a **16em** board and COM 12 on an **8em** board.

8. Click **Finish**.

**Result:** The **Ports Configuration** window displays.

9. Click **Next**, then **Finish**.

**Result:** The installation is complete. Shut down and reboot the your computer system.

➤ **When the computer is rebooted:**

1. Check if the COM ports are installed by clicking **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Computer Management**.
2. In the **Computer Management** window, select **Device Manager** and expand the **Ports (COM & LPT)** available to your computer. Verify the list of COM ports and numbers that you installed.

## Setting Up pcANYWHERE

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, pcANYWHERE Version 10.0 or higher is already set up for you.*



The pcANYWHERE software program is a communications package that allows your GE Security Business Partner or Support Center personnel to dial into your computer and perform online diagnostics. We strongly recommend that you use this software for remote diagnostics.

Follow specific installation instructions included with your version of software (pcANYWHERE Version 9.3 or higher).

Although there are multiple installation options for pcANYWHERE, you will need to install the Host Only option on the Secure Perfect 6.0 host computer. The modem defined to be used by pcANYWHERE must not be used by Secure Perfect 6.0 for micro communications.

For your GE Security Business Partner or Support Center personnel to dial into your computer, you need to provide the phone number of your host computer. The line must be analog with a direct phone number.

**NOTE:** To ensure that your computer is secure against unauthorized access, DO NOT leave pcANYWHERE in waiting mode. Place pcANYWHERE in waiting mode only when you are expecting an incoming call from an authorized user.

## Setting Up Dial-Up Modems

*If you purchased this system from GE Security, the modem is already set up for you.*

A dedicated support modem for use by GE Security Business Partners and Customer Support only is highly recommended. Micro modems are used to communicate with dial-up micros. For Micro/5 and PX-2000 modems, we recommend that you lock the baud rate at 9600.

Before a modem can be used with Secure Perfect 6.0, it must be set up in the operating system. Refer to your modem documentation and Windows 2000 documentation for more information.

If this modem is to be used to communicate with micros, YOU MUST MANUALLY LOCK THE SPEED OF THE MODEM AT 9600 BAUD.

➤ **To lock the speed of the modem at 9600 baud:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then **Control Panel**.
2. From the **Control Panel**, select **Phone and Modem Options**.
3. On the **Modems** tab, select the modem you are using for your micros; click the **Properties** button.
4. In the **Maximum port speed** field, select 9600.



**NOTE:** Not all modems will use the exact commands listed in the previous step. So, if your modem does not use that command, use the definitions below to select the equivalent command.

**&Q0:** Selects direct asynchronous operation and turns off error correction, data compression, and automatic speed buffering (ASB).

**S37:** Selects the speed that your modem uses to attempt a connection with the remote modem. This is the data transmission speed across the telephone line from modem to modem. If the remote modem does not support the speed specified by **S37**, your modem attempts to connect at the next lower speed. This continues until a connection is made, the options are exhausted, or the remote modem times out.

=9: 9600 bits/second

If you have problems at 9600, you can try a lower baud rate:

=8: 4800 bits/second

=7: 2400 bits/second

5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK** again.
7. Click **Close**.

## Installing Access 2002 on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Servers

*If your purchase included Microsoft Access 2002, GE Security will install it for you.*

The use of Microsoft Access 2002 is not required; it is used solely in creating custom reports.

You may install from the Microsoft Office Windows XP Installation CD or Microsoft Access 2002 CD.

Insert CD into your CD-ROM drive and follow the onscreen instructions as well as instructions provided in Microsoft documentation. This section does not provide step-by-step instructions.

*Important!*

During installation, you will be required to enter a user name and organization name. Enter a user name and the name of your organization.

The Microsoft Office Windows XP Installation suite includes Access 2002. Refer to the PDF document on CD, *Secure Perfect and Microsoft Access 2002* for instructions to create new projects and connect to your Secure Perfect 6.0 database files with Access 2002.



When accessing your report in Access 2002 from Secure Perfect, DO NOT make changes to any tables. This is a read-only access.

## Appendix C: OPTIONAL: CCTV Interfaces

The CCTV Interface system operates separately from Secure Perfect and requires its own hardware and software. This chapter details the process of installing CCTV interfaces, including setup and configuration. It also contains information for the operating system once the interface is installed.

Integrated Kalatel digital video surveillance configuration and management are detailed in the Secure Perfect Help system.



In this appendix:

[“Software Requirements” on page C.2](#)

[“Burle Allegiant System” on page C.2](#)

[“Pelco System” on page C.11](#)

[“Kalatel System” on page C.18](#)

[“American Dynamics System” on page C.26](#)

[“Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms” on page C.34](#)

[“Monitoring” on page C.35](#)

[“Diagnostics” on page C.36](#)

[“Removal of CCTV Client Interface” on page C.36](#)

## Software Requirements

- **For the CCTV system, you must have one of the following:**
  - Burle Allegiant System: Allegiant LTC 8359/00 Master control software
  - For the Pelco System: None
  - For the Kalatel System: None
  - For the American Dynamics System: None
- **For the Secure Perfect System**
  1. Secure Perfect CCTV Interface program
  2. Secure Perfect Version 2.1, EE 1.1 or SP3.X or later

## Burle Allegiant System

The Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant Interface supports the Burle Allegiant controllers TC8500 through TC8901.

A serial COM port is the only additional hardware requirement for Secure Perfect. It is used to communicate with the Burle Allegiant controller. A separate COM port can also be configured to report Video Loss detection, which is reported using the alarm monitor as a Video Loss alarm when one or more cameras lose its video signal. A separate video loss alarm is generated for each camera.

The Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant Interface provides the capability to automatically control Burle Allegiant CCTV cameras and to monitor remotely when Secure Perfect alarms change state. To be able to monitor the alarms, the desired Secure Perfect alarms must be linked or “mapped” to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in Burle Allegiant. When Secure Perfect receives the mapped alarm, Secure Perfect sends a message to the Burle Allegiant system to turn on the linked CCTV camera(s) and monitor(s). The Burle Allegiant system will then control the appropriate camera(s) and monitor(s). No operator intervention is required. As an alarm is cleared by the operator from the Secure Perfect **Alarm Monitor** form, or when the Secure Perfect alarm resets, the Burle

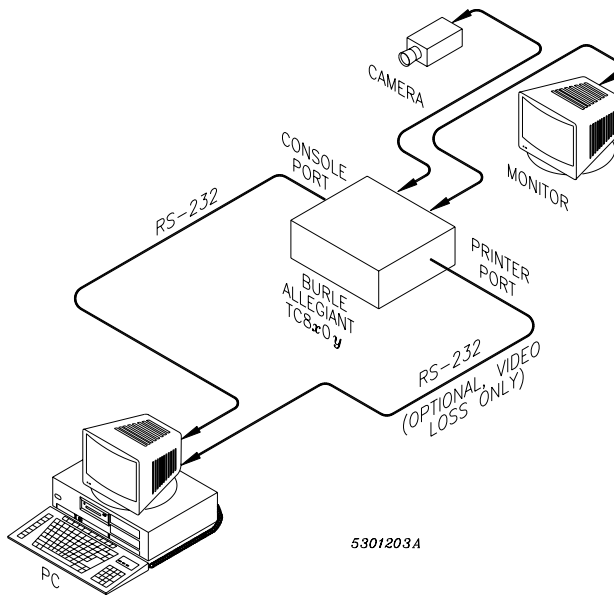
Allegiant system will be informed that the alarm is now reset and responded to and the appropriate camera will turn off.

## Setup Overview

➤ **To perform a successful configuration:**

1. Set up the Secure Perfect system and the Burle Allegiant system or verify the setup if this is an existing system. [Figure C-1](#) on the next page provides a basic example of the hardware setup. See [“Hardware Requirements” on page C.4](#) and [“Software Requirements” on page C.2](#) for more information.
2. Install the Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant software on the Secure Perfect computer. See [“Installation: Burle Allegiant” on page C.6](#).
3. Add CCTV alarms and then link or “map” the Secure Perfect alarms to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in Burle Allegiant. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.8](#) and See [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).

Once the Secure Perfect and Burle Allegiant systems are set up and configured, operation of the CCTV control feature will be a hands-free procedure.



**Figure C-1. Overview of the Secure Perfect and Burle Allegiant Interface**

## Hardware Requirements

### For the Burle Allegiant System

- Allegiant (Models TC8500 through TC8901) controller provided by Burle
- CCTV cameras and monitors

**NOTE:** Refer to your Allegiant manual for DIP switch settings. They should be set to the default value.

Refer to your Burle Allegiant documentation for setup specifics.

For the Secure Perfect System

- Secure Perfect computer

See “Installation: Burle Allegiant” on page C.6 for installation instructions.
- At least one serial port, or two if you plan on using the optional Video Loss monitoring

You may need to purchase and install a Digi board to provide additional COM ports to connect to the switchers.
- Cable to connect the Secure Perfect system to the Burle Allegiant switcher console port (See Figure C-2 and Figure C-3 on the following page.)
- For the optional Video Loss monitoring, a second RS-232-C serial port

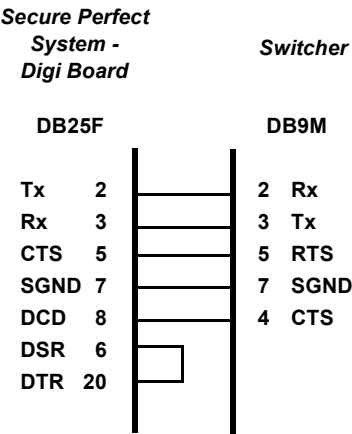
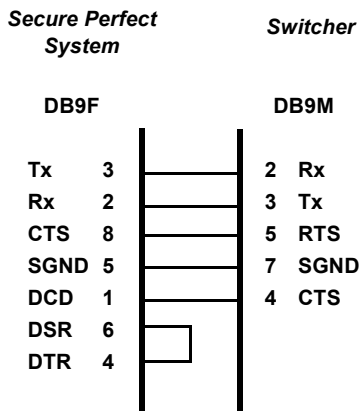


Figure C-2. Cable Pinouts: Secure Perfect System to Switcher (DB25F to DB9M)



**Figure C-3. Cable Pinouts: Secure Perfect System to Switcher (DB9F to DB9M)**

## Installation: Burle Allegiant

This interface program has a separate install utility in the Secure Perfect directory of the client computer or in the client directory of the Server computer.

The Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant program can be installed at the same time the Secure Perfect system is installed or any time thereafter.

**NOTE:** Refer to your Burle Allegiant manual for DIP switch settings. They should be set to the default settings.

### ➤ To install Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant:

1. You **MUST** be logged into the Secure Perfect computer as `secure`. If not, log out and log back in.

**NOTE:** The client on which you are installing Secure Perfect must be able to communicate on the network with the Secure Perfect Server computer.

2. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
3. From the **Run** window, click **Browse**.



4. In the **Look in** field, either select:
  - The hard drive on which Secure Perfect is loaded, such as (C:). Then, navigate to the directory in which Secure Perfect is installed. The default is Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect.
5. Select the `CCTVInstall.exe`.
6. Click **Open**.
7. In the **Run** window, click **OK**.
8. Provide the appropriate answers to prompts and click **Next** to continue.
  - During installation, you are prompted with a few questions.
  - **Type of CCTV Interface**  
Select Burle Allegiant.
  - **Description or name for the interface**  
Enter a description for this interface, such as **Main Building CCTV**

**NOTE:** If multiple same-type CCTV interfaces will be installed on a single Secure Perfect network, the description of each interface **MUST** be unique.

  - **COM port to which this interface is connected**  
Select the COM port.
9. **COM port for video loss signal**  
OPTIONAL: Select a COM port to use as a second connection for the interface. Click **Next**.
10. Click **Install** to complete the installation. You will need to stop and restart the Secure Perfect server for these changes to take effect.
11. Once the installation is complete, from the **Control Panel**, select **System, Hardware tab, Device Manager, and then Ports**. Select the COM port you previously selected in the installation and provide identical settings for baud rate, data bits, parity, stop bits, and flow control as your CCTV Controller setup.

12. When you are ready to launch the CCTV program, you will need to restart the Secure Perfect services on this client.
13. Once the system is running, log in to the computer as a Secure Perfect user and start the Secure Perfect application. Log in to Secure Perfect and from the **Operation** menu, select **Client Monitor**. You will notice an entry for the CCTV you just installed.
14. To start the CCTV application, you will need to create CCTV alarms in the CCTV **Alarm** form first. Then you will need to map the desired Secure Perfect alarm to CCTV on the **Alarm** form CCTV tab. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.8](#) and [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).
15. To start your CCTV interface, click **Launch Client** on the toolbar while the CCTV interface is selected. This will start the program that communicates with your CCTV switcher.

## Configuring Alarms

The communication between the Secure Perfect system and the Burle Allegiant system is bidirectional, meaning that alarms are sent from Secure Perfect to the Burle Allegiant system and alarms are also sent from the Burle Allegiant system to the Secure Perfect system.

### Alarms from the Burle Allegiant System

There are two alarms that can be generated from the Burle Allegiant CCTV system.

#### Loss of COMM Alarm

This alarm signifies that the interface program is no longer able to communicate with the Allegiant controller.

#### Video Loss Alarm

This alarm is reported only if you selected the optional video loss port during the installation of the Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant software. A separate alarm is generated for each camera that is configured on the Burle system.

The first alarm is set up for you. However, the Video Loss Alarm requires that a special command be executed on the Burle Allegiant system to

report this alarm. Refer to the Burle Allegiant documentation for more information.

## Alarms from Secure Perfect

The Secure Perfect - Burle Allegiant Interface allows Secure Perfect alarms to trigger CCTV cameras/monitors to turn on or off on the Burle Allegiant system. Before this can happen, Secure Perfect needs to be notified as to which Secure Perfect alarms are to be the triggers and which messages need to be sent to the Allegiant system to trigger cameras/monitors.

To configure this correctly, follow the steps below. Each step is explained in more detail in the sections that follow.

1. Add, change, or delete the desired CCTV alarms. See [“Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms”](#) on page C.9.
2. Map Secure Perfect alarms to CCTV alarms. See [“Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms”](#) on page C.34.

## Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms

CCTV alarms are the actual messages that are sent to the Allegiant Interface. They control the sequence of monitors and cameras are switched on and off. The Allegiant controller is pre-programmed to interpret these messages. (To program the Burle Allegiant controller, refer to the manual on the Burle Allegiant command console language.)

### ➤ To add CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the **Description** field, enter the appropriate description for your system. Example: Burle Allegiant CCTV Alarm
4. In the **CCTV Interface** field, choose **Burle Allegiant**.
5. In the **CCTV Alarm** field, choose the alarm number of the interface you will be monitoring.

6. The **Enable Message** and **Disable Message** fields are automatically filled. Use these default settings.
7. In the **Reset CCTV Alarm** field, two reset choices for the alarm are provided: **When the SP alarm is cleared from the Alarm Monitor, or When the SP alarm Resets.**

This means the reset or the disable message can be sent when the Secure Perfect alarm:

- Is cleared from the Alarm Monitor,
- or resets.

8. Click **Save**.

➤ **To change CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Search**.
3. In the Search Result window, locate the CCTV alarm you want to change, then select it. The alarm information now displays.
4. Make the desired changes.
5. Click **Save**.

➤ **To delete CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Search**.
3. In the Search Result window, locate the CCTV alarm you want to delete then select it.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. You will be prompted to verify your decision to delete. Click **Yes** to delete or **No** to keep the record.

## Pelco System

The Secure Perfect - Pelco Interface supports the Pelco controller CM9760.

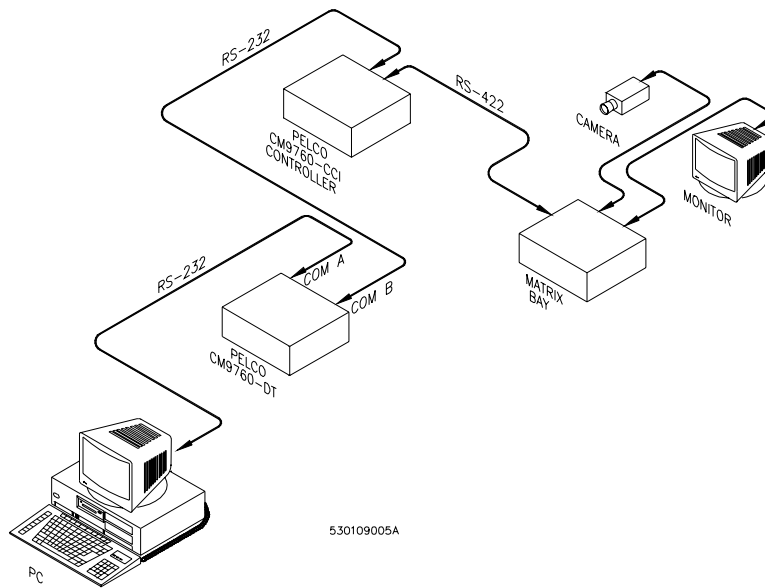
The Secure Perfect - Pelco Interface provides the capability to automatically control Pelco CCTV cameras and to monitor remotely when Secure Perfect alarms change state. To be able to monitor the alarms, the desired Secure Perfect alarms must be linked or “mapped” to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in Pelco. When Secure Perfect received the mapped alarm, Secure Perfect sends a message to the Pelco system to turn on the linked CCTV camera(s) and monitor(s). The Pelco system will then control the appropriate camera(s) and monitor(s). No operator intervention is required. As an alarm is cleared by the operator from the **Alarm Monitor** form, or when the Secure Perfect alarm resets, the Pelco system will be informed that the alarm is now reset and responded to and the appropriate camera will turn off.

### Setup Overview

➤ To perform a successful configuration, follow these steps.

1. Set up the Secure Perfect system and the Pelco system or verify the setup if this is an existing system. [Figure C-4](#) provides a basic example of the hardware setup. See [“Software Requirements” on page C.2](#) and [“Hardware Requirements” on page C.12](#) for more information.
2. Install the Secure Perfect - Pelco software on the desired Secure Perfect computer. See [“Installation: Pelco” on page C.14](#).
3. Add CCTV alarms and then link or “map” the desired Secure Perfect alarms to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in Pelco. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.16](#) and [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).

Once the Secure Perfect and Pelco systems are set up and configured, operation of the CCTV control feature will be a hands-free procedure.



**Figure C-4. Overview of the Secure Perfect and Pelco Interface**

## Hardware Requirements

### For the Pelco System

- Cable to connect the CM9760-DT box and the controller (Refer to [Figure C-5](#) for cable pinout information.)
- CCTV cameras and monitors
- CM9760 controller provided by Pelco
- CM9760-DT box provided by Pelco
- Pelco CCTV equipment

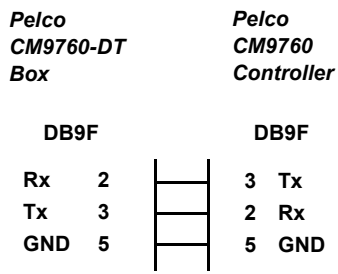


Figure C-5. Cable Pinouts: CM9760-DT Box to Controller (DB9F to DB9F)

For the Secure Perfect System

- Secure Perfect computer  
Refer to [“Installation: Pelco” on page C.14.](#)
- Cable to connect the Secure Perfect system and the Pelco CM9760-DT box.

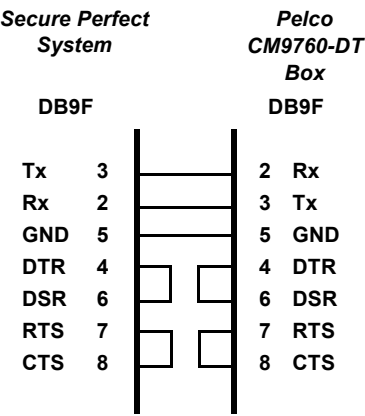
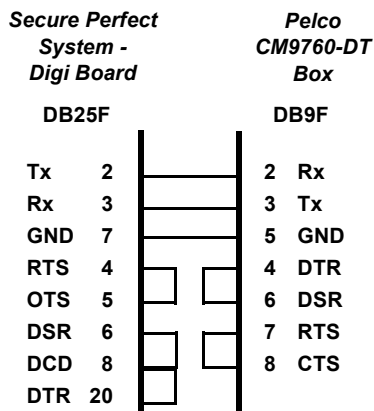


Figure C-6. Cable Pinouts: Secure Perfect System to Pelco CM9760-DT (DB9F to DB9F)



**Figure C-7. Cable Pinouts: Secure Perfect System to Pelco CM9760-DT (DB25F to DB9F)**

## Installation: Pelco

This interface program has a separate install utility in the Secure Perfect directory of the client computer or in the Client directory of the Server computer.

The Secure Perfect - Pelco program can be installed at the same time the Secure Perfect system is installed or any time thereafter.

**NOTE:** Refer to your Pelco manual for DIP switch settings. They should be set to the default settings.

### ► To install Secure Perfect - Pelco:

1. You **MUST** be logged into the Secure Perfect computer as `secure`. If not, log out and log in again.

**NOTE:** The client on which you are installing Secure Perfect must be able to communicate on the network with the License Domain Controller.

2. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
3. From the **Run** window, click **Browse**.



4. In the **Look in** field, either select the hard drive on which Secure Perfect is loaded, such as (C:). Then, navigate to the directory where Secure Perfect is installed. The default is Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect.
5. Select the `CCTVInstall.exe`.
6. Click **Open**.
7. In the **Run** window, click **OK**.
8. Provide the appropriate answers to prompts and click **Next** to continue.

During installation, you are prompted with a few questions.

- **Type of CCTV Interface**  
Select Pelco.
- **Description or name for the interface**  
Enter a description for this interface, such as Main Building CCTV.

**NOTE:** If multiple same-type CCTV interfaces will be installed on a single Secure Perfect network, the description of each interface **MUST** be unique.

- **COM port to which this interface is connected**  
Select the COM port.

9. Click **Install** to complete the installation.
10. Once the installation is complete, from the **Control Panel**, select **System, Hardware tab, Device Manager**, and then **Ports**. Select the COM port you previously selected in the installation and provide identical settings for baud rate, data bits, parity, stop bits, and flow control as your CCTV Controller's setup.
11. When you are ready to launch the CCTV program, you will need to restart the Secure Perfect services on this client.
12. Once the system is running, log in to the computer as a Secure Perfect user and start the Secure Perfect application. Log in to Secure Perfect and from the **Operation** menu, select **Client Monitor**. You will notice an entry for the CCTV you just installed.

13. To start the CCTV application, you will need to create CCTV alarms in the CCTV **Alarm** form first. Then you will need to map the desired Secure Perfect alarm to CCTV on the **Alarm** form **CCTV** tab. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.8](#) and [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).
14. To start your CCTV interface, click **Launch Client** on the toolbar while the CCTV interface is selected. This will start the program that communicates with your CCTV switcher.

## Configuring Alarms

The communication between the Secure Perfect system and the Pelco system is bidirectional, meaning that alarms are sent from Secure Perfect to the Pelco system and alarms are also sent from the Pelco system to the Secure Perfect system.

### Alarms from the Pelco System

There is one alarm that can be generated from the Pelco CCTV system.

#### Loss of COMM Alarm

This alarm signifies that the interface program is no longer able to communicate with the Pelco controller.

### Alarms from Secure Perfect

The Secure Perfect - Pelco interface allows Secure Perfect alarms to trigger CCTV cameras/monitors to turn on or off on the Pelco system. Before this can happen, Secure Perfect needs to be notified as to which Secure Perfect alarms are to be the triggers and which messages need to be sent to the Pelco system to trigger cameras/monitors.

To configure this correctly, follow the steps below. Each step is explained in more detail in the sections that follow.

1. Add, change, or delete the desired CCTV alarms. See [“Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms” on page C.17](#).
2. Map Secure Perfect alarms to CCTV alarms. See [“Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms” on page C.34](#).

## Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms

CCTV alarms are the actual messages that are sent out to the Pelco Interface. They control what sequence of monitors and cameras are switched on and off. The Pelco controller is pre-programmed to interpret these messages. (To program the Pelco controller, refer to the manual on the Pelco command console language.)

➤ **To add CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the **Description** field, enter the appropriate description for your system. Example: **Pelco CCTV Alarm**
4. In the **CCTV Interface** field, choose **Pelco**.
5. In the **CCTV Alarm** field, choose the alarm number of the interface you will be monitoring.
6. The **Enable Message** and **Disable Message** fields are automatically selected. Use these default settings.
7. In the **Reset CCTV Alarm** field, two reset choices for the alarm are provided: **when the SP alarm is cleared from the Alarm Monitor**, or **when the SP alarm Resets**.

This means the Reset or the disable message can be sent out when the Secure Perfect alarm:

- Is cleared from the Alarm Monitor, or
- Resets.

8. Click **Save**.

➤ **To change CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.

2. Click **Search**.
3. In the Search Result window, locate the CCTV alarm you want to change then select it. The alarm information now displays.
4. Make the desired changes.
5. Click **Save**.

► **To delete CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Search**.
3. In the **Search Result** window, locate and then select the CCTV alarm you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. You will be prompted to verify your decision to delete. Click **Yes** to delete or **No** to keep the record.

## Kalatel System

The Secure Perfect - Kalatel Interface supports the Kalatel controller KTD-348.

The Secure Perfect - Kalatel Interface provides the capability to automatically control Kalatel CCTV cameras and to monitor remotely when Secure Perfect alarms change state. To be able to monitor the alarms, the desired Secure Perfect alarms must be linked or “mapped” to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in Kalatel. When Secure Perfect receives the mapped alarm, Secure Perfect sends a message to the Kalatel system to turn on the linked CCTV camera(s) and monitor(s). The Kalatel system will then control the appropriate camera(s) and monitor(s). No operator intervention is required. As an alarm is cleared by the operator from the **Alarm Monitor** form, or when the Secure Perfect alarm resets,

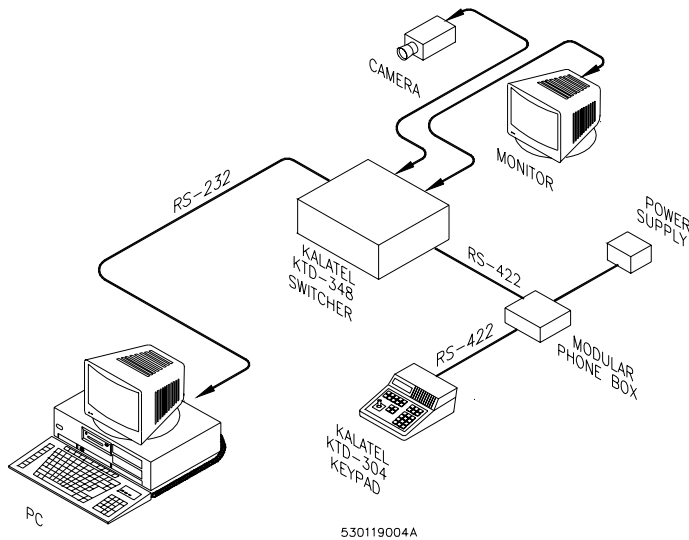
the Kalatel system will be informed that the alarm is now reset and responded to and the appropriate camera will turn off.

## Setup Overview

➤ **To perform a successful configuration, follow these steps:**

1. Set up the Secure Perfect system and the Kalatel system or verify the setup if this is an existing system. [Figure C-8](#) on the next page provides a basic example of the hardware setup. See [“Software Requirements” on page C.2](#) and [“Hardware Requirements” on page C.20](#) and for more information.
2. Install the Secure Perfect - Kalatel software on the desired Secure Perfect computer. See [“Installation: Kalatel” on page C.22](#).
3. Add CCTV alarms and then link or “map” the desired Secure Perfect alarms to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in Kalatel. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.24](#) and [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).

Once the Secure Perfect and Kalatel systems are set up and configured, operation of the CCTV control feature will be a hands-free procedure.

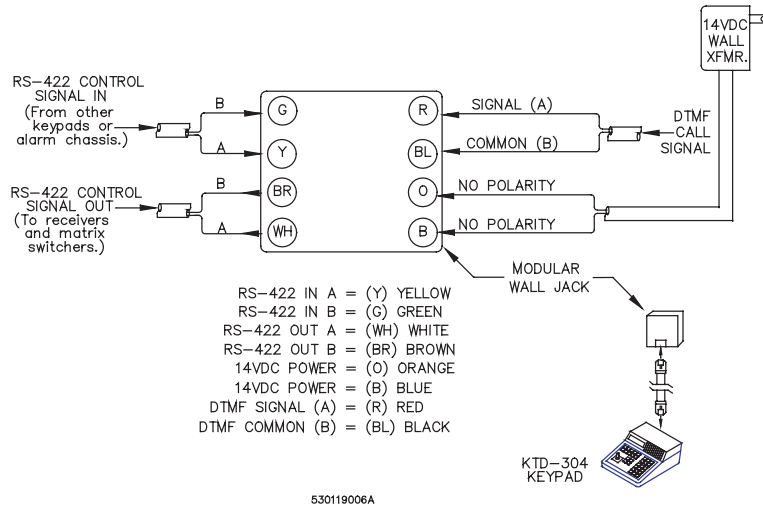


**Figure C-8. Overview of the Secure Perfect and Kalatel Interface**

## Hardware Requirements

### For the Kalatel System

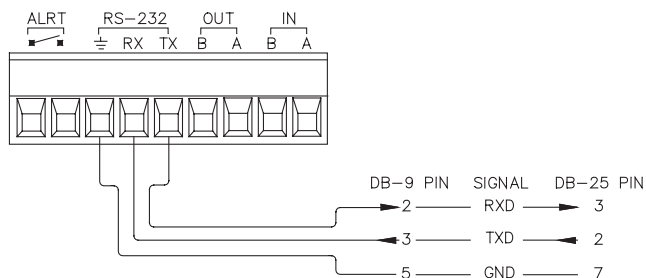
- Cable to connect the KTD-304 keypad to the KTD-348 switcher. (Refer to the figure below for cable pinout information.)
- CCTV cameras and monitors
- KTD-348 controller provided by Kalatel
- KTD-304 keypad provided by Kalatel



**Figure C-9. Cable Pinouts: KTD-304 to KTD-348**

## For the Secure Perfect System

- Secure Perfect computer  
 Refer to [“Installation: Kalatel”](#) on page C.22.
- Cable to connect the Secure Perfect system from Kalatel KTD-348.



530119005A

**Figure C-10. Cable Pinouts: Secure Perfect System to Kalatel KTD-348**

## Installation: Kalatel

This interface program has a separate install utility in the Secure Perfect directory of the client computer or in the Client directory of the Server computer.

The Secure Perfect - Kalatel program can be installed at the same time the Secure Perfect system is installed or any time thereafter.

**NOTE:** Refer to your Kalatel manual for DIP switch settings. They should be set to the default settings.

### ➤ To install Secure Perfect - Kalatel:

1. You **MUST** be logged into the Secure Perfect computer as `secure`. If not, log out and log back in.

**NOTE:** The client on which you are installing Secure Perfect must be able to communicate on the network with the License Domain Controller.

2. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
3. From the **Run** window, click **Browse**.



4. In the **Look in** field, select the hard drive on which Secure Perfect is loaded, such as (C:). Then, navigate to the directory Secure Perfect is installed. The default is Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect.
5. Select the `CCTVInstall.exe`.
6. Click **Open**.
7. In the **Run** window, click **OK**.
8. Provide the appropriate answers to prompts and click **Next** to continue.

During installation, you are prompted with a few questions.

- **Type of CCTV Interface**  
Select Kalatel.
- **Description or name for the interface**  
Enter a description for this interface, such as Main Building CCTV.

**NOTE:** If multiple same-type CCTV interfaces will be installed on a single Secure Perfect network, the description of each interface **MUST** be unique.

- **COM port to which this interface is connected**  
Select the COM port.

9. Click **Install** to complete the installation.
10. Once the installation is complete, from the **Control Panel**, select **System, Hardware tab, Device Manager, Ports**. Select the COM port you previously selected in the installation and provide identical settings for baud rate, data bits, parity, stop bits, and flow control as your CCTV Controller's setup.
11. When you are ready to launch the CCTV program, you will need to restart the **Secure Perfect** services on this client.
12. Once the system is running, log in to the computer as a Secure Perfect user and start the Secure Perfect application. Log in to Secure Perfect and from the **Operation** menu, select **Client Monitor**. You will notice an entry for the CCTV you just installed. (For **Secure**

**Perfect 2.1 and EE 1.1**, from the **Administration** menu, select **Client Management**.)

13. To start the CCTV application, you will need to create CCTV alarms in the CCTV **Alarm** form first. Then you will need to map the desired Secure Perfect alarm to CCTV on the **Alarm** form CCTV tab. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.8](#) and [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).
14. To start your CCTV interface, click **Launch Client** on the toolbar while the CCTV interface is selected. This will start the program that communicates with your CCTV switcher.

## Configuring Alarms

The communication between the Secure Perfect system and the Kalatel system is a one-way communication. Secure Perfect only sends data to the Kalatel switcher; it does not receive any messages from Kalatel. If the Kalatel switcher loses communications with the Secure Perfect system, there will NOT be a Loss of COMM Alarm generated on the Secure Perfect system.

Only the loss of Client COMM Alarm is installed in the Kalatel Interface. This alarm is generated from Secure Perfect when the Secure Perfect server is no longer able to communicate with the interface program.

### Alarms from Secure Perfect

The Secure Perfect - Kalatel Interface allows Secure Perfect alarms to trigger CCTV cameras/monitors to turn on or off on the Kalatel system. Before this can happen, Secure Perfect needs to be notified as to which Secure Perfect alarms are to be the triggers and which messages need to be sent to the Kalatel system to trigger cameras/monitors.

To configure this correctly, follow the steps below. Each step is explained in more detail in the sections that follow.

1. Add, change, or delete the desired CCTV alarms. See [“Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms” on page C.25](#).
2. Map Secure Perfect alarms to CCTV alarms. See [“Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms” on page C.34](#).

## Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms

CCTV alarms are the actual messages that are sent out to the Kalatel Interface. They control what sequence of monitors and cameras are switched on and off. The Kalatel controller is pre-programmed to interpret these messages. (To program the Kalatel controller, refer to the manual on the Kalatel command console language.)

➤ **To add CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the **Description** field, enter the appropriate description for your system. Example: Kalatel CCTV Alarm
4. In the **CCTV Interface** field, choose **Kalatel**.
5. In the **CCTV Alarm** field, choose the alarm number of the interface you will be monitoring.
6. The **Enable Message** and **Disable Message** fields are automatically filled. Use these default settings.
7. In the **Reset CCTV Alarm** field, two reset choices for the alarm are provided: **when the SP alarm is cleared from the Alarm Monitor, or when the SP alarm Resets**.

This means the Reset or the disable message can be sent out when the Secure Perfect alarm:

- Is cleared from the Alarm Monitor, or
- Resets.

8. Click **Save**.

➤ **To change CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.

2. Click **Search**.
3. In the Search Result window, locate and then select the CCTV alarm you want to change. The alarm information now displays.
4. Make the required changes.
5. Click **Save**.
6. To delete CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:
7. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
8. Click **Search**.
9. In the Search Result window, locate and then select the CCTV alarm you want to delete.
10. Click **Delete**.
11. You will be prompted to verify your decision to delete. Click **Yes** to delete or **No** to keep the record.

## American Dynamics System

The Secure Perfect - American Dynamics Interface supports the American Dynamics controller.

The Secure Perfect - American Dynamics Interface provides the capability to automatically control American Dynamics CCTV cameras and to monitor remotely when Secure Perfect alarms change state. To be able to monitor the alarms, the desired Secure Perfect alarms must be linked or “mapped” to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in American Dynamics. When Secure Perfect receives the mapped alarm, Secure Perfect sends a message to the American Dynamics system to turn on the linked CCTV camera(s) and monitor(s). The American Dynamics system will then control the appropriate camera(s) and monitor(s). No operator intervention is required. As an alarm is cleared by the operator from the Secure Perfect **Alarm Monitor** form, or when the Secure Perfect alarm resets, the American Dynamics system will be informed that the

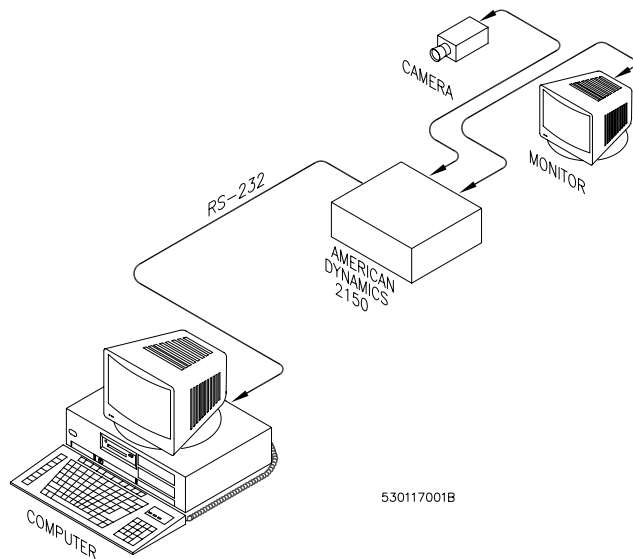
alarm is now reset and responded to and the appropriate camera will turn off.

## Setup Overview

➤ **To perform a successful configuration, follow these steps:**

1. Set up the Secure Perfect system and the American Dynamics system or verify the setup if this is an existing system. [Figure C-11](#) provides a basic example of the hardware setup. See [“Software Requirements” on page C.2](#) and [“Hardware Requirements” on page C.28](#) for more information.
2. Install the Secure Perfect - American Dynamics software on the desired Secure Perfect computer. See [“Installation: American Dynamics” on page C.30](#).
3. Add CCTV alarms and then link or “map” the desired Secure Perfect alarms to the appropriate CCTV cameras set up in American Dynamics. See [“Configuring Alarms” on page C.32](#) and [“Monitoring” on page C.35](#).

Once the Secure Perfect and American Dynamics systems are set up and configured, operation of the CCTV control feature will be a hands-free procedure.



**Figure C-11. Overview of the Secure Perfect and American Dynamics Interface**

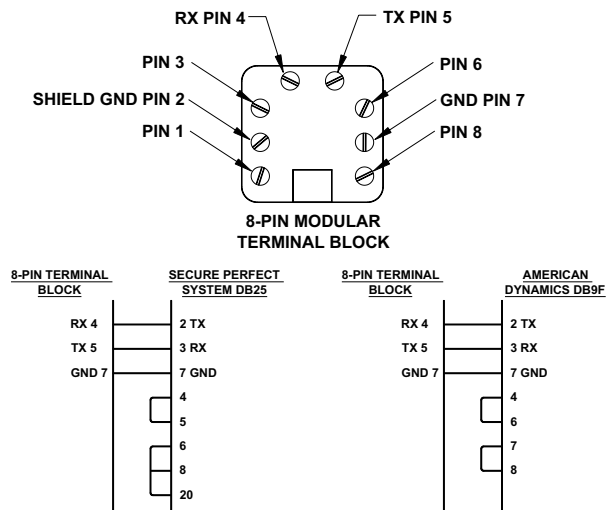
## Hardware Requirements

### For the American Dynamics System

For the American Dynamics System:

- AD 2150 controller provided by American Dynamics
- CCTV cameras and monitors

- Cable to connect the Secure Perfect system and the American Dynamics switches.



**Figure C-12. Cable Pinouts: Terminal Block to DB25F and Terminal Block to DB9F**

## For the Secure Perfect System

- Secure Perfect computer

Refer to [“Installation: American Dynamics”](#) on page C.30.

## Installation: American Dynamics

This interface program has a separate install utility in the Secure Perfect directory of the client computer or in the Client directory of the Server computer.

The Secure Perfect - American Dynamics program can be installed at the same time the Secure Perfect system is installed or any time thereafter.

**NOTE:** Refer to your American Dynamics manual for DIP switch settings. They should be set to the default settings.

### ► To install Secure Perfect - American Dynamics:

1. You **MUST** be logged into the Secure Perfect computer as `secure`. If not, log out and log back in.

**NOTE:** The client on which you are installing Secure Perfect must be able to communicate on the network with the License Domain Controller.

2. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
3. From the **Run** window, click **Browse**.
4. In the **Look in** field, select the hard drive on which Secure Perfect is loaded, such as (C:). Then, navigate to the directory in which Secure Perfect is installed. The default is Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect.
5. Select the `CCTVInstall.exe`.
6. Click **Open**.
7. In the **Run** window, click **OK**.
8. Provide the appropriate answers to prompts and click **Next** to continue.



- During installation, you are prompted with a few questions.
- **Type of CCTV Interface**  
Select American Dynamics.
- **Description or name for the interface**  
Enter a description for this interface, such as Main Building CCTV.

**NOTE:** If multiple same-type CCTV interfaces will be installed on a single Secure Perfect network, the description of each interface **MUST** be unique.

- **COM port to which this interface is connected**  
Select the COM port.
9. Click **Install** to complete the installation.
  10. Once the installation is complete, from the **Control Panel**, select **System, Hardware tab, Device Manager, Ports**. Select the COM port you previously selected in the installation and provide identical settings for baud rate, data bits, parity, stop bits, and flow control as your CCTV Controller's setup.
  11. When you are ready to launch the CCTV program, you will need to restart the Secure Perfect services on this client.
  12. Once the system is running, log in to the computer as a Secure Perfect user and start the Secure Perfect application. Log in to Secure Perfect and from the **Operation** menu, select **Client Monitor**. You will notice an entry for the CCTV you just installed.
  13. To start the CCTV application, you will need to create CCTV alarms in the CCTV **Alarm** form first. Then you will need to map the desired Secure Perfect alarm to CCTV on the **Alarm** form CCTV tab. See ["Configuring Alarms" on page C.8](#) and ["Monitoring" on page C.35](#).
  14. To start your CCTV interface, click **Launch Client** on the toolbar while the CCTV interface is selected. This will start the program that communicates with your CCTV switcher.

## Configuring Alarms

The communication between the Secure Perfect system and the American Dynamics system is a one-way communication. Secure Perfect only sends data to the American Dynamics switcher; it does not receive any messages from American Dynamics. If the American Dynamics switcher loses communications with the Secure Perfect system, there will NOT be a Loss of COMM Alarm generated on the Secure Perfect system.

Only the loss of Client COMM Alarm is installed in the American Dynamics Interface. This alarm is generated from Secure Perfect when the Secure Perfect server is no longer able to communicate with the interface program.

### Alarms from Secure Perfect

The Secure Perfect - American Dynamics Interface allows Secure Perfect alarms to trigger CCTV cameras/monitors to turn on or off on the American Dynamics system. Before this can happen, Secure Perfect needs to be notified as to which Secure Perfect alarms are to be the triggers and which messages need to be sent to the American Dynamics system to trigger cameras/monitors.

To configure this correctly, follow the steps below. Each step is explained in more detail in the sections that follow.

1. Add, change, or delete the desired CCTV alarms. [See “Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms” on page C.32.](#)
2. Map Secure Perfect alarms to CCTV alarms. [See “Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms” on page C.34.](#)

## Adding, Changing, or Deleting CCTV Alarms

CCTV alarms are the actual messages that are sent out to the American Dynamics Interface. They control what sequence of monitors and cameras are switched on and off. The American Dynamics controller is pre-programmed to interpret these messages. (To program the American

Dynamics controller, refer to the manual on the American Dynamics command console language.)

➤ **To add CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the **Description** field, enter the appropriate description for your system. Example: American Dynamics CCTV Alarm
4. In the **CCTV Interface** field, choose **American Dynamics**.
5. In the **CCTV Alarm** field, choose the alarm number of the interface you will be monitoring.
6. The **Enable Message** and **Disable Message** fields are automatically filled. Use these default settings.
7. In the **Reset CCTV Alarm** field, two reset choices for the alarm are provided: **when the SP alarm is cleared from the Alarm Monitor**, or **when the SP alarm Resets**.  
This means the Reset or the disable message can be sent out when the Secure Perfect alarm:
  - Is cleared from the Alarm Monitor, or
  - Resets.
8. Click **Save**.

➤ **To change CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
2. Click **Search**.
3. In the Search Result window, locate and then select the CCTV alarm you want to change. The alarm information now displays.

4. Make the desired changes.
  5. Click **Save**.
- **To delete CCTV alarms within Secure Perfect:**
1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Administration**, then **CCTV Alarms**.
  2. Click **Search**.
  3. In the Search Result window, locate and then select the CCTV alarm you want to delete.
  4. Click **Delete**.
  5. You will be prompted to verify your decision to delete. Click **Yes** to delete or **No** to keep the record.

## Mapping Secure Perfect Alarms to CCTV Alarms

Before you begin, make sure that you have:

- Added CCTV alarms (see previous section)
- Configured the micros so that you have Secure Perfect alarms to map (refer to the Online help for assistance)

➤ **To map Secure Perfect alarms to CCTV alarms:**

1. From the Secure Perfect main menu, select **Device**, then **Alarm**.
2. Click **Search**.
3. In the Search Result window, locate and then select the Secure Perfect alarm you want to map. The alarm information now displays.
4. Select the **CCTV** tab.

5. Click **Add/Remove**.

**Result:** The CCTV alarms you added in the previous step display.

6. Select the desired CCTV alarm you would like to map to the Secure Perfect alarm.
7. Click to assign an alarm. If you would like to unassign one, select the desired CCTV alarm from the list on the right and click.
8. When you are done assigning alarms, click **OK**.
9. Click the **Alarm** tab. Verify that the **Monitor** field is enabled.
10. Click **Save**.

## Monitoring

When you added CCTV alarms, the **Reset CCTV Alarm** field provided two reset choices for the alarm: **when the SP alarm is cleared from the Alarm Monitor**, or **when the SP alarm Resets**.

If you selected **when the SP alarm is cleared from the Alarm Monitor**, then you need to clear the Secure Perfect alarm from the Alarm Monitor before the RESET message is sent to the controller.

However, if you selected **when the SP alarm Resets**, you can observe the results on the Allegiant system as Secure Perfect alarms are SET and

RESET (indicated by the red and green LED on the Secure Perfect Alarm Monitor).

All Secure Perfect alarms that trigger CCTV alarms must be monitored.

## Diagnostics

A diagnostic object called CCTV reports all diagnostics for all CCTV interfaces on the client. For details of the diagnostic utility, see [“Viewing the Diagnostics Logs” on page 15.3](#).

## Removal of CCTV Client Interface

The Secure Perfect CCTV interface program is removed when you delete the client interface from any one of the Secure Perfect client computers.

➤ **To remove the CCTV client interface:**

**NOTE:** You must first remove all CCTV alarm mapping before you can delete the CCTV interface.

1. From the **Administration menu**, select **Client** to open the **Client form**.
2. Click **Search** to display all records.
3. Select the CCTV client.
4. Click **Delete** on the Secure Perfect toolbar.

## Appendix D: OPTIONAL: Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros

This chapter provides information for installing the FlashTool application. You will use FlashTool to download application code to your micros. If you have not yet installed the Flashtool application, do so at this time.



In this appendix:

[“Installing FlashTool” on page D.2](#)

[“Flashing the Micros” on page D.3](#)

[“‘Flash Micro’ - Flashing Micros that have SP3.x or Later Firmware” on page D.4](#)

[“FlashTool - Flashing Micros in Maintenance Mode or SP Firmware Earlier than SP3.x” on page D.6](#)

## Installing FlashTool

Before flashing (downloading application code) to your micros in maintenance mode or micros with firmware earlier than SP3.X, you need to install the Micro Installation Tool - FlashTool. Follow the instructions below.

➤ **To install the FlashTool application:**

1. Log in as local administrator.
2. In Windows **Explorer**, navigate to the Secure Perfect\Firmware folder on the Server computer.
3. Double-click the `FlashTool.EXE` file.

**Result:** The **Micro Installation Tool - FlashTool Installation Welcome** window displays.

4. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Select Destination Directory** window displays.

5. Review and verify the destination of the FlashTool folder.
6. Verify that adequate free disk space is available for the installation.
7. Click **Next**.

**Result:** The **Ready to Install** window displays.

8. Click **Next**.

**Result:** Install completes and an **Installation Completed** window displays.

9. Click **Finish**.

**Result:** The **FlashTool** application closes and there is now a FlashTool folder in the location that you selected for installation on your computer.



## Flashing the Micros

There are two methods of downloading (flashing) application code to your micros:

### 1. 'Flash Micro' Icon in Secure Perfect

This feature is not available for new micros. 'Flash Micro' is a flash method which does not require the micro to be in maintenance mode and downloads firmware to micros with existing SP3.x or later firmware within the Secure Perfect 6.0 application. See [“Flash Micro' - Flashing Micros that have SP3.x or Later Firmware” on page D.4.](#)

### 2. Flashtool

A standard method for micros in maintenance mode or micros with firmware earlier than SP3.x. To upgrade micros with firmware earlier than SP3.x, you must use the FlashTool standard method of flashing. Refer to [“FlashTool - Flashing Micros in Maintenance Mode or SP Firmware Earlier than SP3.x” on page D.6.](#)

Information for each flashing method is detailed in the following sections.

## List of Micros

The following micros can be flashed:

- Micro/5-PX
- Micro/5-PXN
- Micro/PX-2000
- Micro/PXN-2000
- Micros defined above in maintenance mode
- Micros defined above running any version of Secure Perfect prior to SP3.x

## 'Flash Micro' - Flashing Micros that have SP3.x or Later Firmware

The **Operations** menu, **Micro Utility Form** of the Secure Perfect application allows you to monitor communications and control each micro in the system. You can identify the micros using the **Search Criteria and Micro Selection**. (Refer to the *Secure Perfect Administrator's Guide* or Online Help or additional information.) The procedure to flash has been integrated so that the micro stays online and continues to process badge and alarm activity while in the process of being flashed.

➤ **To flash micros that already have SP3.x firmware:**

1. Do the following:

Verify that the Secure Perfect services are running (refer to the appropriate section of this manual for the system you purchased).

AND

Log in. (Refer to ["Logging In and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.0" on page 9.1](#). The login ID and password must belong to a member of the spadmin local user group on the Secure Perfect 6.0 Server computer and the user group on any Secure Perfect 6.0 client computer.) Verify that the micro is online (in the Secure Perfect application, select the **Operations** menu, **Micro Utility Form**. Check the **State** column).

2. Select the micro or multiple micros that you want to flash. If flashing a line of micros, we recommend starting with the end-of-line micro, and work toward the head-of-line micro. This requires a working knowledge of your Secure Perfect system.

The firmware version column on the **Micro Utility Form** displays the current firmware on the micro.

- If the LED is green, the firmware on the micro matches the latest firmware on the Server computer.
- If the LED is yellow, the micro firmware does not match with the latest firmware on the Server computer.

## Flash Micro Icon

➤ **To flash the identified micros with application code:**

1. Click **Flash** from the **Micro Utility Form** toolbar.

**Result:** The **Micro Flash & Micro Parameter Configuration** window displays. The **Micro Flash & Micro Parameter Configuration** window is only available if the micro is online. There are three options in this window:

- **View/Edit Parameter Info**

This option is available for selection of a single micro. When this option is selected, the **Micro Parameter Configuration** window displays and the configuration for the micro is retrieved.

The **Micro Parameter - Direct/Dialup** tab allows you to change the connection type of the micro and its **Address**, **Idle Time**, and **DI res tolerance**.

The **Micro Parameter - Networking** tab allows you to change the network parameters for a network micro. This tab will display only if the system identified your micro as a network micro.

- **View/Edit Flash Files**

This option is used by GE Security Customer Support personnel when it is necessary to selectively flash an older version of firmware on a micro.

- **Start Flashing Micro(s)**

This will flash the micro with the correct firmware.

2. Click **Start Flashing Micro(s)** to immediately download the appropriate firmware to the micro.

**Result:** A dialog box will display asking you to verify you request.

3. Click **OK** to begin the flash and reset process.

**Result:** The micro firmware has been downloaded to your micro. The micro will reset after a successful flash and database download will take place.

## FlashTool - Flashing Micros in Maintenance Mode or SP Firmware Earlier than SP3.x

**NOTE:** Micros in maintenance mode or firmware earlier than SP3.x **MUST** be flashed with the FlashTool application found in your Secure Perfect/FlashTool application folder.

To flash a micro in maintenance mode or with a version of firmware earlier than SP3.x, you must use FlashTool. Instructions are listed in the sections that follow.

➤ **To flash your micro with FlashTool:**

1. Verify that the computer is serially connected to the micro that is to be flashed.
2. Make sure that Secure Perfect services are not started, or the selected comm port has assigned micros set to off line.
3. If not already installed, install FlashTool. Refer to [“Installing FlashTool” on page D.2](#).
4. To run FlashTool, navigate to the folder where you installed FlashTool. Double-click `Flash.exe`.

**Result:** The FlashTool introductory window displays.

5. Click **OK**.
6. If this is the first time you are running FlashTool, a message will display stating **No config file found, creating a default file**. Click **OK**. (You will not see this message again when running the FlashTool application.)
7. When FlashTool loads, it will prompt you to add new files that are found in the FlashTool folder. Answer **Yes** to all prompts.

**Result:** The application opens, automatically searches for micros, and usually finds a micro within 30 seconds. The **FlashTool** micro status window displays. If no micro is connected, the window displays as in [Figure D-1](#).



**Figure D-1. FlashTool Window**

If FlashTool does not recognize the existing firmware, the window displays similar to [Figure D-2](#).



**Figure D-2. Micro Status**

When FlashTool recognizes the firmware, the window will display the *Micro Type* and firmware application code information.



**Figure D-3. FlashTool Micro Status**

8. A micro can be flashed with application firmware in two ways:
- Use one of the Automatic Firmware Flash buttons in the middle of the window. Click the button that corresponds to the firmware you want. (The buttons display the latest firmware release on your computer.)

**Result:** The download and flash process begins.

- Alternatively, you may click Micro Flash from the **Options** listed on the left of the window.

**Result:** A drop-down list of firmware displays.

- Select the latest version of Secure Perfect x.000 App Code.
- Click **Start Flash**.

**Result:** The download and flash process begins.

**NOTE:** If you are flashing a Micro/5-PXN, you must follow the steps in this order:

1. Flash the OS firmware.
2. Allow FlashTool to identify the micro.
3. Flash the application firmware.

## Download and Flash Process

The firmware download and flash process takes approximately ten minutes for each micro flashed. A progress window similar to the following will display during the flash process:



**Figure D-4. Standard FlashTool Flash Window**

The window will automatically close after a successful flash process.

## Flashing a Line of Micros

FlashTool can flash all micros in a line that have been selected and fully identified.

➤ **To flash a line of micros:**

1. Select **Search for Line of Micros**.

**Result:** FlashTool will search for all micros in a specified communication line. The results of the search (up to 8 micros) will be displayed in the box below the Status field.

2. Click an individual micro from the list, then the **Select** button to select an individual micro from the list of micros found.

OR

Click **Select All** to select the entire line of micros at one time.



If you choose to flash each micro individually and not the entire line of micros, you **MUST** start flashing the end-of-line micros first, and work your way up the line. The head-of-line micro **MUST** be flashed last. If you do not follow this order and start with the head-of-line, you cannot flash the downstream micros. The way to prevent this from occurring is to select all micros and flash the entire line at the same time.

**NOTE:** To flash the entire line of micros, all micros must be selected and identified prior to starting the flash process. The hourglass icon will remind you to wait until the system identifies the selected micro/micros and allows you to proceed.

3. Once selected and identified, an asterisk will display in front of the micro name in the list. A list box will display the firmware for each micro. Scroll up or down in the list box to view the version information for each micro that has been selected. The parameter block information may be obtained for a selected micro by clicking **Parameters**, which is enabled when a micro is selected. (Refer to [“Editing the Parameter Block.”](#) and [“Syntax Checking.”](#) following this section.)
4. Click **Deselect** to cancel the selection of an individual micro.
5. Begin the flash process using one of the following methods:
  - Click one of the **Automatic Firmware Flash** buttons.
  - Click Micro Flash, select firmware from the firmware drop-down box, and then click **Start Flash**.

## Syntax Checking

**Parameter Block Syntax Checking** can be selected from the Flashtool **File** menu. **Parameter Block Error Checking** impedes illegal combinations of settings that are micro-specific. It is strongly



recommended that this setting remain enabled. A warning message will display if you choose to disable this feature.

**EXCEPTION:** When configuring a Micro5/PXN micro that contains anything other than SP3.x firmware (for example, Secure Perfect 2.1 or Picture Perfect), this option **MUST** be disabled.

## Editing the Parameter Block

The micro parameter block holds micro data such as micro address, phone numbers, and network configuration parameters.

➤ **To edit the parameter block:**

1. Allow sufficient time for FlashTool to identify the micro.
2. Click **Parameters**.

**Result:** Flashtool reads the parameter block in the micro and displays it in the window.

3. Edit as necessary. Select the **Networking** tab to enter information for a Micro/5-PXN.
  - You **MUST** enter an IP address for the micro.
  - A host IP address is not required and can be left blank.
  - Enter the Gateway IP address (will be the same as the micro IP address).
  - All other fields are set by default. Only change them if necessary depending on your network configuration.
4. Click **Save to Micro**.

**Result:** FlashTool writes the data into the parameter block of the micro and resets the micro.

## **NOTES**

# Appendix E: Dell PowerEdge RAID Level 1 Recovery

This chapter is intended to be a guide in the recovery of a Dell PowerEdge system with a PERC 3/SI RAID 1 controller, in the event of a system failure. For specific details, refer to the documentation shipped with your Dell PowerEdge system.



In this appendix:

[“Overview” on page E.2](#)

[“Disclaimer” on page E.2](#)

[“Recovery” on page E.3](#)

## Overview

A Server with redundant array of independent disks (RAID) allows you to spread your data among two or more hard disks rather than on a single hard disk that may fail at any time.

**NOTE:** In the event of a drive failure, a message displays in the Event Viewer Systems and Applications Log. Periodically checking the Event Viewer will help detect drive failures.

The specifics of your error and warning messages can be determined by consulting the manufacturer's documentation or Customer Support for your brand of hardware.

This chapter is intended to be a guide in the recovery of a Dell PowerEdge system with a PERC 3/SI RAID 1 controller, in the event of a system failure. For specific details, refer to the documentation shipped with your Dell PowerEdge system.

## Disclaimer

GE Security recommends that Secure Perfect installations that implement RAID Server configurations use RAID 1 configurations. RAID 5 configurations are not recommended for the Secure Perfect database due to possible transaction load issues. RAID 1 configurations provide 100% data redundancy by disk mirroring.

Some customers may implement a combination of RAID 1 and RAID 5 configurations supported on one Server. This can be a valid Secure Perfect configuration if the operating system and miscellaneous files are isolated on a RAID 5 configuration, while the Secure Perfect Database resides on a RAID 1 mirrored disk drive configuration.

**NOTE:** You should only use RAID 5 for your operating system boot partition if your RAID 5 solution is hardware-based. Hardware-based RAID solutions are provided by Dell's line of PowerEdge servers available to order directly from GE Security.

For those systems that have already been configured, and the location of the Secure Perfect databases needs to be corrected, GE Security have created step-by-step procedures when moving the database files. The

procedures are located in the Secure Perfect Technical Bulletin section of the GE Security Web site.

Go to [www.ge-security.com](http://www.ge-security.com) for additional information.

## Recovery

### What You Will Need

In order to perform a recovery, you will need the following items:

- ☐ Dell OpenManage Server Assistant™ CD  
Version 7.2 or later (provided with your Dell Server)
- ☐ Dell OpenManage Applications CD Version 3.2 or later (provided with your Dell Server)
- ☐ Dell Online Documentation CD (provided with your Dell Server)
- ☐ Dell PowerEdge Systems Installation and Troubleshooting Guide (provided with your Dell Server)
- ☐ Microsoft Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server CD and applicable Service Pack
- ☐ Microsoft SQL Server 2000 CD (Standard Edition) and latest applicable Service Pack

## Replacing a Failed Hard Drive



For optimum results, GE Security recommends that the drive be powered off before it is removed or replaced. A loss of data or data corruption may occur if disks are replaced without powering off.

Replace the damaged hard drive with another hard drive with the same capacity, then restart the system. The RAID controller will automatically rebuild the mirror hard drive.

For instructions on replacing a failed hard drive, refer to the documentation shipped with your Dell PowerEdge System.

## Installing OpenManage Server Assistant

The Server Assistant software provides tools to set up and configure the PowerEdge system components and software. Installation includes drivers, diagnostics, and utilities. Refer to the documentation and instructions shipped with your Dell PowerEdge System.

➤ **If you have a complete system failure (where both hard drives are damaged) or your system has no operating system installed, follow the steps below:**

1. Set up the speakers, monitor, mouse, and keyboard as directed by the documentation provided by Dell.
2. Attach the AC adapter and plug the power cable into a grounded power outlet.
3. Insert the Dell OpenManage Server Assistant CD into the CD-ROM drive.
4. If prompted, select the appropriate language.
5. Accept the terms of the **Software License**.
6. When **Welcome to Dell OpenManage Server Assistant** opens, verify that the language is correct, then click **Server Setup**.

**Result:** The **Server Setup** window displays.

7. Set the **Time Zone** and **Day, Date, and Time**, then click **Start Server Setup**.
8. When the **Configure RAID Controller** window opens, select **RAID-1** and set the **RAID Virtual Disk Size** to **Maximum**. Click **Configure RAID**.

**NOTE:** If a window opens asking if you want to delete the existing virtual disk, click Yes. You are then prompted to reboot. Click OK.

## Installing the Operating System

Refer to [“Preparing the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server” on page 2.1](#), for details and instruction to configure the operating system.

## Installing Dell OpenManage RAID Array Manager

- Follow the instructions below to install and configure the Dell OpenManage RAID Array Manager.
  1. Insert the Dell OpenManage Applications CD in the CD-ROM drive.

**Result:** The CD will autorun unless this function has been disabled. If disabled, click **Start, Run**, then **Browse** to navigate to the drive containing the CD-ROM, then select **setup.exe**. The **Dell OpenManage Installation** window displays.
  2. Click **Next**.
  3. At the **Software License Agreement**, click **Accept** to continue the installation.

**Result:** The **OpenManage Installation Wizard** displays.
  4. At the **Select setup type** screen, click **Express Setup**.
  5. At the **Select system type** screen, click **Both** to indicate that you are installing both **Managed Node** and **Management Station**.

**Result:** A summary window displays the installation options you have selected and gives you an opportunity to verify the installation

criteria, make corrections, or abort the installation. When you are satisfied with the summary, click **Next**.

6. You are prompted to verify all options by asking, **Are you sure?** Click **Yes** to begin the installation.

**Result:** A progress monitor displays, listing the components being installed and the installation of applications proceeds. When installation of all components is complete, you will be asked to reboot the computer.

7. Reboot your computer at this time.

**Result:** An icon displays on the desktop, labeled IT Assistant. You can access the Disk Array software from the icon or the group created in the **Start** menu.

8. After the computer restarts and you log in, a message will display, stating that the Windows 2000 Server application, Disk Administrator, has been replaced by the Dell OpenManage Array Manager. If, for some reason, you later uninstall the Array Manager software, the Windows 2000 Server Disk Administrator will be restored to the pre-installation configuration.

9. Double-click the IT Assistant icon on the desktop to display **Logon Information**.

**Result:** By default, you will be given the choice of **Read only** access to monitor the status of the Disk Array. You may also select **Read/Write** access allowing you to make changes and configure the various parameters of the RAID Array and the files contained on the disk. For this configuration process, we will need **Read/Write** permissions.

10. Select **Read/Write** access and click **OK**. You will not need to provide logon information unless someone has already configured and secured the system and you are making changes to the previous configuration.

**NOTE:** When the program opens for the first time, a message displays stating, *IT Network Monitoring Service is not configured for discovery; would you like to configure now?* Click **No** to close the window and return to the main screen for IT Assistant.



## **Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000**

Refer to [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 2.7](#), for details and instruction to configure SQL Server 2000.

## **What's Next?**

At this time, continue the system installation of Secure Perfect and any options you purchased. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.0 Software” on page 4.1](#).

## **NOTES**

# Appendix F: Installing Printers

This chapter provides information about connecting printers to your computer or your network.



In this appendix:

[“Connecting Printers” on page F.2](#)

## Connecting Printers

You may use either a printer directly connected to your computer or a printer on the network. For example, you may have two Imaging stations but only one printer.

If you plan on printing either badge or alarm transactions, at least one of those printers **MUST** be a line printer, such as a dot matrix that supports a width of 133 characters either by using a wide carriage or printing in compressed mode.

**NOTE:** You can now print badge transactions or alarms transactions from any client workstation printer.

*If you purchased this system with this printer from GE Security, the DataCard drivers are installed for you.*

If you plan on printing badges, you must use a GE Security-approved Imaging printer. Contact your GE Security Sales Representative for a list of supported printer models. For directions on installing the drivers for this printer, refer to the appropriate GE Security documents or the instructions that came with your printer.

To print badges, the default printer **MUST** be the Imaging printer. However, this means that the **Print Preview Report (File menu)** will not display accurately. You will need to select your report printer **BEFORE** you preview a report.

To select a new printer within Secure Perfect 6.0, from the **File** menu, select **Print Setup** and then your report printer.

# Index

## A

- Access 2002 on Professional Server 1.4
- access to the GE Security Web site 1.6, 8.3
- API Service 4.66, 6.80, 7.17, 9.4

## B

- backing up
  - Enterprise Server 11.4
  - Enterprise Server Secure Perfect designs, graphics, images, signatures 11.9
  - Enterprise Server Secure Perfect folder 11.9, 12.7
  - Enterprise Server SecurePerfect database 11.5
  - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectArchive 11.7
  - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectHistory 11.8
  - Global Edition 6.101
  - Professional Server 12.3
  - Professional Server designs, graphics, images, signatures 12.6
  - Professional Server Secure Perfect databases 12.5
- before you begin 1.8

## C

- capacities 8.2
  - license capacities 8.2
- capture card 3.4
- CCTV interfaces
  - Burle, Pelco, Kalatel, American Dynamics C.1
- changing computer name
  - in System Properties 9.8
  - SQL Server Client Tools 9.8
  - using SPServer utility 9.8
- Clear TempDB log 11.21
- client
  - defining in the SP system 7.2
- client computers, adding to SP database 4.72, 6.105
- client file structure 7.23
- Cluster configuration options 5.10
- Cluster technology 5.1
- computer name

- changing server 9.8
- conventions, notational and typographical 1.20
- converting
  - Global Database 6.98
  - upgrading 14.1
- Create SP Database 9.5
- Custom configuration options 4.16, 6.20
- Custom installation
  - Enterprise Edition 4.14, 6.14
  - Global 6.14
  - Professional 4.61, 6.73
  - Professional client 7.10

## D

- database
  - creating 5.15, 9.5
  - creating in Global custom installation 6.26
  - deleting from Enterprise Server 13.7
  - deleting from Professional Server 13.8
  - shrinking 11.19
- Demo Mode 8.8
- dependencies
  - service dependencies A.8
- DFS 6.85
  - DFS Link 6.92
  - Distributed File System Root 6.86
  - New Replica 6.94
- diagnostics
  - remote A.4
  - turning on A.2
  - viewing A.3
- diagnostics log A.3
- dial-up modems B.6
- Digi serial-port expander B.4
- Directory File Services (DFS) 6.85
- Distributed COM Configuration 2.5, 2.6, 3.8
- domain user name 6.18, 6.19, 6.75
- domain, adding a computer to an existing domain 5.3, 6.9

## E

- e-mail accounts
  - setting 9.8
- Enterprise Edition 4.1, 4.8, 8.2
- eZ Edition 8.2

## F

- file share resources, configuring 5.23
- flashing
  - Flash Micro Icon in Secure Perfect D.3
  - installing FlashTool D.2
  - micros that have SP 3.x Firmware D.4
- flashing a line of micros D.9
- folders
  - client 7.24
  - server structure 4.67, 6.81
  - shared 4.68, 6.82, 7.24

## G

- Global Edition 6.1
  - adding additional clients to the database 6.104
  - benefits 6.2
  - converting the Global Database Server 6.98
  - Custom installation 6.14
  - optional configurations 6.98
  - sample configuration 6.3
- guidelines 1.12

## H

- hard drive space, reclaiming 11.19
- Help system
  - accessing Secure Perfect 9.7

## I

- Imaging
  - login setup 7.21
  - share permissions 7.23
  - status 7.20
- installation guidelines 1.12
- installing
  - Custom 4.14, 6.14
  - Custom client 7.10
  - Custom Professional 4.61, 6.73
  - Custom Server computer 4.14, 6.14
  - Global Edition 6.1
  - Typical 4.6
  - Typical client 7.6
- interfaces
  - CCTV C.1
  - Visitor System 1.7
  - Web Reporting 1.7

## L

- license

- capacities 8.2
- Demo Mode 8.8
- entering 8.6
- first time 8.6
- if you do not license during the SP
  - Installation sequence 8.10
  - obtaining 8.3
- log, diagnostic A.3
- logfile, creating A.2
- logging in 9.5
- logging out 10.1

## M

- micro list D.3
- micro utility form
  - flash button D.5
- microcontrollers supported 3.2
- minimum requirements 1.3
- modems
  - dial-up B.6
- monitor settings
  - professional server 3.5
  - standard server 2.5

## N

- network board 2.3, 3.3
- network properties
  - client 3.6
- new features 1.8
- node installation on additional nodes,
  - Clustering 5.21
- non-English operating systems 4.3, 4.29, 4.38, 4.44, 4.52, 4.56, 5.5, 6.12, 6.40, 6.48, 6.54, 6.63, 6.67, 7.5
- notational and typographical conventions 1.20

## O

- operating system (also see non-English operating systems) 2.4, 3.4
- operating systems and configuration 1.5

## P

- password
  - default SP 9.7
  - GE Security 8.4
  - sa 2.9
- password account 6.18, 6.19, 6.75
- pcANYWHERE B.5
- pinging

- First Time License computer 7.2
- pinging additional client computers 4.71, 6.104
- printers F.1
- Professional Edition 4.1, 4.12, 4.61, 8.2
- publication 1.8, 6.4, 6.5, 6.33
- Q**
- Quick Start Guide 1.2
- R**
- RAID E.1
- reclaiming hard drive space 11.19
- recovery
  - SP Enterprise system 11.3, 12.3
- Registry Editor 13.4
- related documentation 1.21
- remote diagnostics A.4
- removing
  - Secure Perfect 13.2
- Replication 1.8, 6.3, 6.84, 6.85, 6.90, 6.91, 6.93, 6.96, 6.110
- replication 6.2, 6.4, 6.6, 6.8, 6.30, 6.86, 6.102, 6.103
- restoring
  - Enterprise Server 11.10
  - Enterprise Server Secure Perfect folder 11.18
  - Enterprise Server SecurePerfect database 11.11
  - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectArchive 11.13
  - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectHistory 11.16
  - Global Edition 6.102
  - Professional Server 12.7
- S**
- serial-port expander
  - Digi B.4
- server file structure 4.67, 6.81
- service pack 1.4, 1.5, 1.15, 2.4, 2.15, 2.16, 3.2, 3.4, 4.2, 4.3, 4.12, 4.29, 4.37, 4.44, 4.52, 4.56, 4.63, 4.69, 5.5, 6.11, 6.39, 6.40, 6.47, 6.53, 6.62, 6.67, 6.77, 6.83, 7.4, 8.12, 11.3, 12.3, E.3
- services
  - auto start on client 7.16
  - auto start on Server 4.65, 6.79
  - dependencies A.8
  - overview 9.2
- setup
  - initial steps for Secure Perfect 1.17
  - Windows 2000/ Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition 1.13
  - Windows 2000/Windows XP Professional Server 1.15
- setup outlines 1.12
- Share Resources, configuring 5.23
- shared folders 4.68, 6.82, 7.24
- shrink archive 11.21
- shrinking
  - database 11.19
- shutting down 10.1
- SPNodeInstall 5.21
- SQL Server
  - installation 2.7
  - removing 13.8
  - removing MSDE 13.9
  - verification of installation and setup 2.11
- SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 2.15
- SQL Server Agent 2.12, 2.13
- Subscription 6.5
- subscription 1.8, 6.4, 6.6, 6.33
- synchronization 6.2, 6.6, 6.102, 6.103
- syntax checking D.10
- T**
- Thin Client installation B.2
- Thin Client installations B.2
- training 1.21
- troubleshooting
  - Global Edition 6.110
  - questions and answers A.4
- Typical installation
  - client 7.6
  - Server 4.6
- U**
- uninstalling
  - Global Edition 6.108
  - Secure Perfect 13.1
- upgrading
  - 5.0 to 6.0 System 14.1
  - prior to version 3.1 14.2
- user account 3.7
- user password 2.7, 3.9
- user passwords 3.7

**V**

Visitor System Interface 1.7

**W**

What's New 1.8

Windows Cluster 5.1



Despite rigorous product testing, some problems cannot be detected in advance. Please let us know if you discover any defects in our software. We value your feedback and want to ensure that our software meets your expectations.

# Software Defect Report

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

First Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Last Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_

e-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

GE Security Business Partner: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact: \_\_\_\_\_

Application Software: \_\_\_\_\_ Version: \_\_\_\_\_

HW Model: \_\_\_\_\_ OS Version: \_\_\_\_\_

Hardware  
Platform:

- ☐ Intel PC  
☐ RS/6000

Operating  
System:

- ☐ Windows  
☐ AIX  
☐ Linux

Severity:

- ☐ Data Loss  
☐ System Crash  
☐ Function Loss  
☐ Inconvenience  
☐ Cosmetic

Replication:

- ☐ Every Time  
☐ Frequently  
☐ Intermittent  
☐ One Time Only

Problem Description:

(Please be as specific as possible, and explain what you were doing when the problem occurred.)

Please fax this form to:

GE Security Customer Support

(561) 998-6233



# Customer Survey

**Title of this book: Secure Perfect 6.0 Installation Guide**

**My overall rating of this book:**

- ☐ Excellent
- ☐ Good
- ☐ Satisfactory
- ☐ Fair
- ☐ Poor

**What I liked most about this book:**

---

---

---

---

---

---

**What I would change, add, delete, etc. in future editions of this book:**

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Please return this form to:**

Attn: Technical Writing  
GE Infrastructure - Security  
791 Park of Commerce Blvd., Ste. 100  
Boca Raton, FL 33487

or e-mail your comments to:  
**bctdocs@ge.com**

